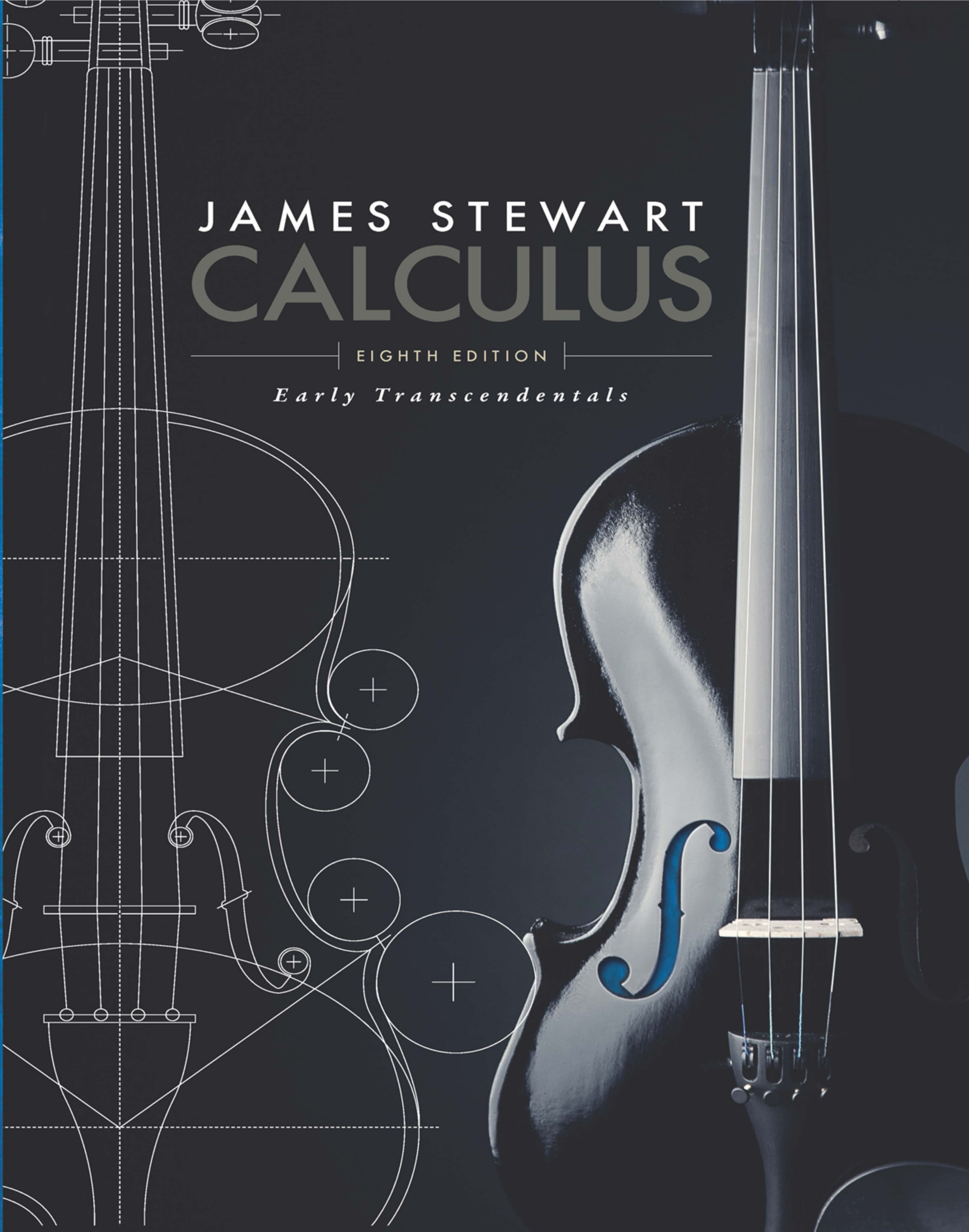
JAMES STEWART

CALCULUS

EIGHTH EDITION

Early Transcendentals



CALCULUS

EARLY TRANSCENDENTALS

EIGHTH EDITION

JAMES STEWART

McMASTER UNIVERSITY

AND

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

CENGAGE Learning®

Australia • Brazil • Mexico • Singapore • United Kingdom • United States

This is an electronic version of the print textbook. Due to electronic rights restrictions, some third party content may be suppressed. Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. The publisher reserves the right to remove content from this title at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it. For valuable information on pricing, previous editions, changes to current editions, and alternate formats, please visit www.cengage.com/highered to search by ISBN#, author, title, or keyword for materials in your areas of interest.

Important Notice: Media content referenced within the product description or the product text may not be available in the eBook version.

CENGAGE Learning

Calculus: Early Transcendentals, **Eighth Edition**
James Stewart

Product Manager: Neha Taleja
Senior Content Developer: Stacy Green
Associate Content Developer: Samantha Lugtu
Product Assistant: Stephanie Kreuz
Media Developer: Lynh Pham
Marketing Manager: Ryan Ahern
Content Project Manager: Cheryll Linthicum
Art Director: Vernon Boes
Manufacturing Planner: Becky Cross
Production Service: TECHarts
Photo and Text Researcher: Lumina Datamatics
Copy Editor: Kathi Townes, TECHarts
Illustrator: TECHarts
Text Designer: Diane Beasley
Cover Designer: Irene Morris, Morris Design
Compositor: Stephanie Kuhns, Kristina Elliott, and Kira Abdallah, TECHarts
Cover Image: elisanth/123RF; tharrison/Getty Images

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at **Cengage Learning Customer & Sales Support, 1-800-354-9706**.

For permission to use material from this text or product, submit all requests online at **www.cengage.com/permissions**. Further permissions questions can be e-mailed to **permissionrequest@cengage.com**.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2014951195

Student Edition:
ISBN: 978-1-285-74155-0

Loose-leaf Edition:
ISBN: 978-1-305-27235-4

Cengage Learning
20 Channel Center Street
Boston, MA 02210
USA

Cengage Learning is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with office locations around the globe, including Singapore, the United Kingdom, Australia, Mexico, Brazil, and Japan. Locate your local office at **www.cengage.com/global**.

Cengage Learning products are represented in Canada by Nelson Education, Ltd.

To learn more about Cengage Learning Solutions, visit **www.cengage.com**. **Purchase any of our products at your local college store or at our preferred online store www.cengagebrain.com.**

Windows is a registered trademark of the Microsoft Corporation and used herein under license.
Macintosh is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. Used herein under license.
Maple is a registered trademark of Waterloo Maple, Inc.
Mathematica is a registered trademark of Wolfram Research, Inc.
Tools for Enriching Calculus is a trademark used herein under license.

K12T14

Printed in the United States of America
Print Number: 01 Print Year: 2014

Contents

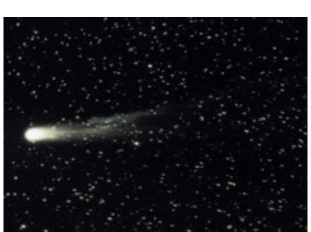
3 Differentiation Rules 171

4 Applications of Differentiation 275

8 Further Applications of Integration 543

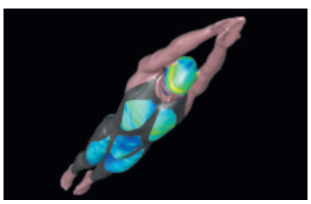
9 Differential Equations 585

10 Parametric Equations and Polar Coordinates 639

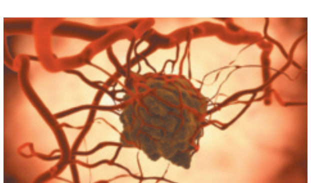


13 Vector Functions 847

14 Partial Derivatives 887



15 Multiple Integrals 987



Preface

> A great discovery solves a great problem but there is a grain of discovery in the solution of any problem. Your problem may be modest; but if it challenges your curiosity and brings into play your inventive faculties, and if you solve it by your own means, you may experience the tension and enjoy the triumph of discovery.
>
> GEORGE POLYA

The art of teaching, Mark Van Doren said, is the art of assisting discovery. I have tried to write a book that assists students in discovering calculus—both for its practical power and its surprising beauty. In this edition, as in the first seven editions, I aim to convey to the student a sense of the utility of calculus and develop technical competence, but I also strive to give some appreciation for the intrinsic beauty of the subject. Newton undoubtedly experienced a sense of triumph when he made his great discoveries. I want students to share some of that excitement.

The emphasis is on understanding concepts. I think that nearly everybody agrees that this should be the primary goal of calculus instruction. In fact, the impetus for the current calculus reform movement came from the Tulane Conference in 1986, which formulated as their first recommendation:

Focus on conceptual understanding.

I have tried to implement this goal through the *Rule of Three:* "Topics should be presented geometrically, numerically, and algebraically." Visualization, numerical and graphical experimentation, and other approaches have changed how we teach conceptual reasoning in fundamental ways. More recently, the Rule of Three has been expanded to become the *Rule of Four* by emphasizing the verbal, or descriptive, point of view as well.

In writing the eighth edition my premise has been that it is possible to achieve conceptual understanding and still retain the best traditions of traditional calculus. The book contains elements of reform, but within the context of a traditional curriculum.

Alternate Versions

I have written several other calculus textbooks that might be preferable for some instructors. Most of them also come in single variable and multivariable versions.

- *Calculus,* Eighth Edition, is similar to the present textbook except that the exponential, logarithmic, and inverse trigonometric functions are covered in the second semester.
- *Essential Calculus*, Second Edition, is a much briefer book (840 pages), though it contains almost all of the topics in *Calculus,* Eighth Edition. The relative brevity is achieved through briefer exposition of some topics and putting some features on the website.
- *Essential Calculus: Early Transcendentals,* Second Edition, resembles *Essential Calculus,* but the exponential, logarithmic, and inverse trigonometric functions are covered in Chapter 3.

- *Calculus: Concepts and Contexts*, Fourth Edition, emphasizes conceptual understanding even more strongly than this book. The coverage of topics is not encyclopedic and the material on transcendental functions and on parametric equations is woven throughout the book instead of being treated in separate chapters.
- *Calculus: Early Vectors* introduces vectors and vector functions in the first semester and integrates them throughout the book. It is suitable for students taking engineering and physics courses concurrently with calculus.
- *Brief Applied Calculus* is intended for students in business, the social sciences, and the life sciences.
- *Biocalculus: Calculus for the Life Sciences* is intended to show students in the life sciences how calculus relates to biology.
- *Biocalculus: Calculus, Probability, and Statistics for the Life Sciences* contains all the content of *Biocalculus: Calculus for the Life Sciences* as well as three additional chapters covering probability and statistics.

What's New in the Eighth Edition?

The changes have resulted from talking with my colleagues and students at the University of Toronto and from reading journals, as well as suggestions from users and reviewers. Here are some of the many improvements that I've incorporated into this edition:

- The data in examples and exercises have been updated to be more timely.
- New examples have been added (see Examples 6.1.5, 11.2.5, and 14.3.3, for instance). And the solutions to some of the existing examples have been amplified.
- Three new projects have been added: The project *Controlling Red Blood Cell Loss During Surgery* (page 244) describes the ANH procedure, in which blood is extracted from the patient before an operation and is replaced by saline solution. This dilutes the patient's blood so that fewer red blood cells are lost during bleeding and the extracted blood is returned to the patient after surgery. The project *Planes and Birds: Minimizing Energy* (page 344) asks how birds can minimize power and energy by flapping their wings versus gliding. In the project *The Speedo LZR Racer* (page 936) it is explained that this suit reduces drag in the water and, as a result, many swimming records were broken. Students are asked why a small decrease in drag can have a big effect on performance.
- I have streamlined Chapter 15 (Multiple Integrals) by combining the first two sections so that iterated integrals are treated earlier.
- More than 20% of the exercises in each chapter are new. Here are some of my favorites: 2.7.61, 2.8.36–38, 3.1.79–80, 3.11.54, 4.1.69, 4.3.34, 4.3.66, 4.4.80, 4.7.39, 4.7.67, 5.1.19–20, 5.2.67–68, 5.4.70, 6.1.51, 8.1.39, 12.5.81, 12.6.29–30, 14.6.65–66. In addition, there are some good new Problems Plus. (See Problems 12–14 on page 272, Problem 13 on page 363, Problems 16–17 on page 426, and Problem 8 on page 986.)

Features

Conceptual Exercises

The most important way to foster conceptual understanding is through the problems that we assign. To that end I have devised various types of problems. Some exercise sets begin with requests to explain the meanings of the basic concepts of the section. (See, for instance, the first few exercises in Sections 2.2, 2.5, 11.2, 14.2, and 14.3.) Similarly, all the review sections begin with a Concept Check and a True-False Quiz. Other exercises test conceptual understanding through graphs or tables (see Exercises 2.7.17, 2.8.35–38, 2.8.47–52, 9.1.11–13, 10.1.24–27, 11.10.2, 13.2.1–2, 13.3.33–39, 14.1.1–2, 14.1.32–38, 14.1.41–44, 14.3.3–10, 14.6.1–2, 14.7.3–4, 15.1.6–8, 16.1.11–18, 16.2.17–18, and 16.3.1–2).

Another type of exercise uses verbal description to test conceptual understanding (see Exercises 2.5.10, 2.8.66, 4.3.69–70, and 7.8.67). I particularly value problems that combine and compare graphical, numerical, and algebraic approaches (see Exercises 2.6.45–46, 3.7.27, and 9.4.4).

Graded Exercise Sets

Each exercise set is carefully graded, progressing from basic conceptual exercises and skill-development problems to more challenging problems involving applications and proofs.

Real-World Data

My assistants and I spent a great deal of time looking in libraries, contacting companies and government agencies, and searching the Internet for interesting real-world data to introduce, motivate, and illustrate the concepts of calculus. As a result, many of the examples and exercises deal with functions defined by such numerical data or graphs. See, for instance, Figure 1 in Section 1.1 (seismograms from the Northridge earthquake), Exercise 2.8.35 (unemployment rates), Exercise 5.1.16 (velocity of the space shuttle *Endeavour*), and Figure 4 in Section 5.4 (San Francisco power consumption). Functions of two variables are illustrated by a table of values of the wind-chill index as a function of air temperature and wind speed (Example 14.1.2). Partial derivatives are introduced in Section 14.3 by examining a column in a table of values of the heat index (perceived air temperature) as a function of the actual temperature and the relative humidity. This example is pursued further in connection with linear approximations (Example 14.4.3). Directional derivatives are introduced in Section 14.6 by using a temperature contour map to estimate the rate of change of temperature at Reno in the direction of Las Vegas. Double integrals are used to estimate the average snowfall in Colorado on December 20–21, 2006 (Example 15.1.9). Vector fields are introduced in Section 16.1 by depictions of actual velocity vector fields showing San Francisco Bay wind patterns.

Projects

One way of involving students and making them active learners is to have them work (perhaps in groups) on extended projects that give a feeling of substantial accomplishment when completed. I have included four kinds of projects: *Applied Projects* involve applications that are designed to appeal to the imagination of students. The project after Section 9.3 asks whether a ball thrown upward takes longer to reach its maximum height or to fall back to its original height. (The answer might surprise you.) The project after Section 14.8 uses Lagrange multipliers to determine the masses of the three stages of a rocket so as to minimize the total mass while enabling the rocket to reach a desired velocity. *Laboratory Projects* involve technology; the one following Section 10.2 shows how to use Bézier curves to design shapes that represent letters for a laser printer. *Writing Projects* ask students to compare present-day methods with those of the founders of calculus—Fermat's method for finding tangents, for instance. Suggested references are supplied. *Discovery Projects* anticipate results to be discussed later or encourage discovery through pattern recognition (see the one following Section 7.6). Others explore aspects of geometry: tetrahedra (after Section 12.4), hyperspheres (after Section 15.6), and intersections of three cylinders (after Section 15.7). Additional projects can be found in the *Instructor's Guide* (see, for instance, Group Exercise 5.1: Position from Samples).

Problem Solving

Students usually have difficulties with problems for which there is no single well-defined procedure for obtaining the answer. I think nobody has improved very much on George Polya's four-stage problem-solving strategy and, accordingly, I have included a version of his problem-solving principles following Chapter 1. They are applied, both explicitly and implicitly, throughout the book. After the other chapters I have placed sections called *Problems Plus*, which feature examples of how to tackle challenging calculus problems. In selecting the varied problems for these sections I kept in mind the following advice from David Hilbert: "A mathematical problem should be difficult in order to entice us, yet not inaccessible lest it mock our efforts." When I put these challenging problems on assignments and tests I grade them in a different way. Here I reward a student significantly for ideas toward a solution and for recognizing which problem-solving principles are relevant.

Technology

The availability of technology makes it not less important but more important to clearly understand the concepts that underlie the images on the screen. But, when properly used, graphing calculators and computers are powerful tools for discovering and understanding those concepts. This textbook can be used either with or without technology and I use two special symbols to indicate clearly when a particular type of machine is required. The icon indicates an exercise that definitely requires the use of such technology, but that is not to say that it can't be used on the other exercises as well. The symbol CAS is reserved for problems in which the full resources of a computer algebra system (like Maple, Mathematica, or the TI-89) are required. But technology doesn't make pencil and paper obsolete. Hand calculation and sketches are often preferable to technology for illustrating and reinforcing some concepts. Both instructors and students need to develop the ability to decide where the hand or the machine is appropriate.

Tools for Enriching Calculus

TEC is a companion to the text and is intended to enrich and complement its contents. (It is now accessible in the eBook via CourseMate and Enhanced WebAssign. Selected Visuals and Modules are available at www.stewartcalculus.com.) Developed by Harvey Keynes, Dan Clegg, Hubert Hohn, and myself, TEC uses a discovery and exploratory approach. In sections of the book where technology is particularly appropriate, marginal icons direct students to TEC Modules that provide a laboratory environment in which they can explore the topic in different ways and at different levels. **Visuals are animations of figures in text; Modules are more elaborate activities and include exercises**. Instructors can choose to become involved at several different levels, ranging from simply encouraging students to use the Visuals and Modules for independent exploration, to assigning specific exercises from those included with each Module, or to creating additional exercises, labs, and projects that make use of the Visuals and Modules.

TEC also includes Homework Hints for representative exercises (usually odd-numbered) in every section of the text, indicated by printing the exercise number in red. These hints are usually presented in the form of questions and try to imitate an effective teaching assistant by functioning as a silent tutor. They are constructed so as not to reveal any more of the actual solution than is minimally necessary to make further progress.

Enhanced WebAssign

Technology is having an impact on the way homework is assigned to students, particularly in large classes. The use of online homework is growing and its appeal depends on ease of use, grading precision, and reliability. With the Eighth Edition we have been working with the calculus community and WebAssign to develop an online homework system. Up to 70% of the exercises in each section are assignable as online homework, including free response, multiple choice, and multi-part formats.

The system also includes Active Examples, in which students are guided in step-by-step tutorials through text examples, with links to the textbook and to video solutions.

Website

Visit CengageBrain.com or stewartcalculus.com for these additional materials:

- Homework Hints
- Algebra Review
- Lies My Calculator and Computer Told Me
- History of Mathematics, with links to the better historical websites
- Additional Topics (complete with exercise sets): Fourier Series, Formulas for the Remainder Term in Taylor Series, Rotation of Axes
- Archived Problems (Drill exercises that appeared in previous editions, together with their solutions)
- Challenge Problems (some from the Problems Plus sections from prior editions)
- Links, for particular topics, to outside Web resources
- Selected Visuals and Modules from Tools for Enriching Calculus (TEC)

Content

Diagnostic Tests The book begins with four diagnostic tests, in Basic Algebra, Analytic Geometry, Functions, and Trigonometry.

A Preview of Calculus This is an overview of the subject and includes a list of questions to motivate the study of calculus.

1 Functions and Models From the beginning, multiple representations of functions are stressed: verbal, numerical, visual, and algebraic. A discussion of mathematical models leads to a review of the standard functions, including exponential and logarithmic functions, from these four points of view.

2 Limits and Derivatives The material on limits is motivated by a prior discussion of the tangent and velocity problems. Limits are treated from descriptive, graphical, numerical, and algebraic points of view. Section 2.4, on the precise definition of a limit, is an optional section. Sections

2.7 and 2.8 deal with derivatives (especially with functions defined graphically and numerically) before the differentiation rules are covered in Chapter 3. Here the examples and exercises explore the meanings of derivatives in various contexts. Higher derivatives are introduced in Section 2.8.

3 Differentiation Rules

All the basic functions, including exponential, logarithmic, and inverse trigonometric functions, are differentiated here. When derivatives are computed in applied situations, students are asked to explain their meanings. Exponential growth and decay are now covered in this chapter.

4 Applications of Differentiation

The basic facts concerning extreme values and shapes of curves are deduced from the Mean Value Theorem. Graphing with technology emphasizes the interaction between calculus and calculators and the analysis of families of curves. Some substantial optimization problems are provided, including an explanation of why you need to raise your head 42° to see the top of a rainbow.

5 Integrals

The area problem and the distance problem serve to motivate the definite integral, with sigma notation introduced as needed. (Full coverage of sigma notation is provided in Appendix E.) Emphasis is placed on explaining the meanings of integrals in various contexts and on estimating their values from graphs and tables.

6 Applications of Integration

Here I present the applications of integration—area, volume, work, average value—that can reasonably be done without specialized techniques of integration. General methods are emphasized. The goal is for students to be able to divide a quantity into small pieces, estimate with Riemann sums, and recognize the limit as an integral.

7 Techniques of Integration

All the standard methods are covered but, of course, the real challenge is to be able to recognize which technique is best used in a given situation. Accordingly, in Section 7.5, I present a strategy for integration. The use of computer algebra systems is discussed in Section 7.6.

8 Further Applications of Integration

Here are the applications of integration—arc length and surface area—for which it is useful to have available all the techniques of integration, as well as applications to biology, economics, and physics (hydrostatic force and centers of mass). I have also included a section on probability. There are more applications here than can realistically be covered in a given course. Instructors should select applications suitable for their students and for which they themselves have enthusiasm.

9 Differential Equations

Modeling is the theme that unifies this introductory treatment of differential equations. Direction fields and Euler's method are studied before separable and linear equations are solved explicitly, so that qualitative, numerical, and analytic approaches are given equal consideration. These methods are applied to the exponential, logistic, and other models for population growth. The first four or five sections of this chapter serve as a good introduction to first-order differential equations. An optional final section uses predator-prey models to illustrate systems of differential equations.

10 Parametric Equations and Polar Coordinates

This chapter introduces parametric and polar curves and applies the methods of calculus to them. Parametric curves are well suited to laboratory projects; the two presented here involve families of curves and Bézier curves. A brief treatment of conic sections in polar coordinates prepares the way for Kepler's Laws in Chapter 13.

11 Infinite Sequences and Series

The convergence tests have intuitive justifications (see page 719) as well as formal proofs. Numerical estimates of sums of series are based on which test was used to prove convergence. The emphasis is on Taylor series and polynomials and their applications to physics. Error estimates include those from graphing devices.

12 Vectors and the Geometry of Space

The material on three-dimensional analytic geometry and vectors is divided into two chapters. Chapter 12 deals with vectors, the dot and cross products, lines, planes, and surfaces.

13 Vector Functions

This chapter covers vector-valued functions, their derivatives and integrals, the length and curvature of space curves, and velocity and acceleration along space curves, culminating in Kepler's laws.

14 Partial Derivatives

Functions of two or more variables are studied from verbal, numerical, visual, and algebraic points of view. In particular, I introduce partial derivatives by looking at a specific column in a table of values of the heat index (perceived air temperature) as a function of the actual temperature and the relative humidity.

15 Multiple Integrals

Contour maps and the Midpoint Rule are used to estimate the average snowfall and average temperature in given regions. Double and triple integrals are used to compute probabilities, surface areas, and (in projects) volumes of hyperspheres and volumes of intersections of three cylinders. Cylindrical and spherical coordinates are introduced in the context of evaluating triple integrals.

16 Vector Calculus

Vector fields are introduced through pictures of velocity fields showing San Francisco Bay wind patterns. The similarities among the Fundamental Theorem for line integrals, Green's Theorem, Stokes' Theorem, and the Divergence Theorem are emphasized.

17 Second-Order Differential Equations

Since first-order differential equations are covered in Chapter 9, this final chapter deals with second-order linear differential equations, their application to vibrating springs and electric circuits, and series solutions.

Ancillaries

Calculus, Early Transcendentals, Eighth Edition, is supported by a complete set of ancillaries developed under my direction. Each piece has been designed to enhance student understanding and to facilitate creative instruction. The tables on pages xxi–xxii describe each of these ancillaries.

Acknowledgments

The preparation of this and previous editions has involved much time spent reading the reasoned (but sometimes contradictory) advice from a large number of astute reviewers. I greatly appreciate the time they spent to understand my motivation for the approach taken. I have learned something from each of them.

Eighth Edition Reviewers

Jay Abramson, *Arizona State University*
Adam Bowers, *University of California San Diego*
Neena Chopra, *The Pennsylvania State University*

Edward Dobson, *Mississippi State University*
Isaac Goldbring, *University of Illinois at Chicago*
Lea Jenkins, *Clemson University*
Rebecca Wahl, *Butler University*

Technology Reviewers

Maria Andersen, *Muskegon Community College*
Eric Aurand, *Eastfield College*
Joy Becker, *University of Wisconsin–Stout*
Przemyslaw Bogacki, *Old Dominion University*
Amy Elizabeth Bowman, *University of Alabama in Huntsville*
Monica Brown, *University of Missouri–St. Louis*
Roxanne Byrne, *University of Colorado at Denver and Health Sciences Center*
Teri Christiansen, *University of Missouri–Columbia*
Bobby Dale Daniel, *Lamar University*
Jennifer Daniel, *Lamar University*
Andras Domokos, *California State University, Sacramento*
Timothy Flaherty, *Carnegie Mellon University*
Lee Gibson, *University of Louisville*
Jane Golden, *Hillsborough Community College*
Semion Gutman, *University of Oklahoma*
Diane Hoffoss, *University of San Diego*
Lorraine Hughes, *Mississippi State University*
Jay Jahangiri, *Kent State University*
John Jernigan, *Community College of Philadelphia*
Brian Karasek, *South Mountain Community College*
Jason Kozinski, *University of Florida*
Carole Krueger, *The University of Texas at Arlington*
Ken Kubota, *University of Kentucky*
John Mitchell, *Clark College*
Donald Paul, *Tulsa Community College*
Chad Pierson, *University of Minnesota, Duluth*
Lanita Presson, *University of Alabama in Huntsville*
Karin Reinhold, *State University of New York at Albany*
Thomas Riedel, *University of Louisville*
Christopher Schroeder, *Morehead State University*
Angela Sharp, *University of Minnesota, Duluth*
Patricia Shaw, *Mississippi State University*
Carl Spitznagel, *John Carroll University*
Mohammad Tabanjeh, *Virginia State University*
Capt. Koichi Takagi, *United States Naval Academy*
Lorna TenEyck, *Chemeketa Community College*
Roger Werbylo, *Pima Community College*
David Williams, *Clayton State University*
Zhuan Ye, *Northern Illinois University*

Previous Edition Reviewers

B. D. Aggarwala, *University of Calgary*
John Alberghini, *Manchester Community College*
Michael Albert, *Carnegie-Mellon University*
Daniel Anderson, *University of Iowa*
Amy Austin, *Texas A&M University*
Donna J. Bailey, *Northeast Missouri State University*
Wayne Barber, *Chemeketa Community College*
Marilyn Belkin, *Villanova University*
Neil Berger, *University of Illinois, Chicago*
David Berman, *University of New Orleans*
Anthony J. Bevelacqua, *University of North Dakota*
Richard Biggs, *University of Western Ontario*
Robert Blumenthal, *Oglethorpe University*
Martina Bode, *Northwestern University*
Barbara Bohannon, *Hofstra University*
Jay Bourland, *Colorado State University*
Philip L. Bowers, *Florida State University*
Amy Elizabeth Bowman, *University of Alabama in Huntsville*
Stephen W. Brady, *Wichita State University*
Michael Breen, *Tennessee Technological University*
Robert N. Bryan, *University of Western Ontario*
David Buchthal, *University of Akron*
Jenna Carpenter, *Louisiana Tech University*
Jorge Cassio, *Miami-Dade Community College*
Jack Ceder, *University of California, Santa Barbara*
Scott Chapman, *Trinity University*
Zhen-Qing Chen, *University of Washington—Seattle*
James Choike, *Oklahoma State University*
Barbara Cortzen, *DePaul University*
Carl Cowen, *Purdue University*
Philip S. Crooke, *Vanderbilt University*
Charles N. Curtis, *Missouri Southern State College*
Daniel Cyphert, *Armstrong State College*
Robert Dahlin
M. Hilary Davies, *University of Alaska Anchorage*
Gregory J. Davis, *University of Wisconsin–Green Bay*
Elias Deeba, *University of Houston–Downtown*
Daniel DiMaria, *Suffolk Community College*
Seymour Ditor, *University of Western Ontario*
Greg Dresden, *Washington and Lee University*
Daniel Drucker, *Wayne State University*
Kenn Dunn, *Dalhousie University*

Dennis Dunninger, *Michigan State University*
Bruce Edwards, *University of Florida*
David Ellis, *San Francisco State University*
John Ellison, *Grove City College*
Martin Erickson, *Truman State University*
Garret Etgen, *University of Houston*
Theodore G. Faticoni, *Fordham University*
Laurene V. Fausett, *Georgia Southern University*
Norman Feldman, *Sonoma State University*
Le Baron O. Ferguson, *University of California—Riverside*
Newman Fisher, *San Francisco State University*
José D. Flores, *The University of South Dakota*
William Francis, *Michigan Technological University*
James T. Franklin, *Valencia Community College, East*
Stanley Friedlander, *Bronx Community College*
Patrick Gallagher, *Columbia University–New York*
Paul Garrett, *University of Minnesota–Minneapolis*
Frederick Gass, *Miami University of Ohio*
Bruce Gilligan, *University of Regina*
Matthias K. Gobbert, *University of Maryland, Baltimore County*
Gerald Goff, *Oklahoma State University*
Stuart Goldenberg, *California Polytechnic State University*
John A. Graham, *Buckingham Browne & Nichols School*
Richard Grassl, *University of New Mexico*
Michael Gregory, *University of North Dakota*
Charles Groetsch, *University of Cincinnati*
Paul Triantafilos Hadavas, *Armstrong Atlantic State University*
Salim M. Haïdar, *Grand Valley State University*
D. W. Hall, *Michigan State University*
Robert L. Hall, *University of Wisconsin–Milwaukee*
Howard B. Hamilton, *California State University, Sacramento*
Darel Hardy, *Colorado State University*
Shari Harris, *John Wood Community College*
Gary W. Harrison, *College of Charleston*
Melvin Hausner, *New York University/Courant Institute*
Curtis Herink, *Mercer University*
Russell Herman, *University of North Carolina at Wilmington*
Allen Hesse, *Rochester Community College*
Randall R. Holmes, *Auburn University*
James F. Hurley, *University of Connecticut*
Amer Iqbal, *University of Washington—Seattle*
Matthew A. Isom, *Arizona State University*
Gerald Janusz, *University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign*
John H. Jenkins, *Embry-Riddle Aeronautical University, Prescott Campus*
Clement Jeske, *University of Wisconsin, Platteville*
Carl Jockusch, *University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign*
Jan E. H. Johansson, *University of Vermont*
Jerry Johnson, *Oklahoma State University*
Zsuzsanna M. Kadas, *St. Michael's College*
Nets Katz, *Indiana University Bloomington*
Matt Kaufman
Matthias Kawski, *Arizona State University*
Frederick W. Keene, *Pasadena City College*
Robert L. Kelley, *University of Miami*
Akhtar Khan, *Rochester Institute of Technology*
Marianne Korten, *Kansas State University*
Virgil Kowalik, *Texas A&I University*
Kevin Kreider, *University of Akron*
Leonard Krop, *DePaul University*
Mark Krusemeyer, *Carleton College*
John C. Lawlor, *University of Vermont*
Christopher C. Leary, *State University of New York at Geneseo*
David Leeming, *University of Victoria*
Sam Lesseig, *Northeast Missouri State University*
Phil Locke, *University of Maine*
Joyce Longman, *Villanova University*
Joan McCarter, *Arizona State University*
Phil McCartney, *Northern Kentucky University*
Igor Malyshev, *San Jose State University*
Larry Mansfield, *Queens College*
Mary Martin, *Colgate University*
Nathaniel F. G. Martin, *University of Virginia*
Gerald Y. Matsumoto, *American River College*
James McKinney, *California State Polytechnic University, Pomona*
Tom Metzger, *University of Pittsburgh*
Richard Millspaugh, *University of North Dakota*
Lon H. Mitchell, *Virginia Commonwealth University*
Michael Montaño, *Riverside Community College*
Teri Jo Murphy, *University of Oklahoma*
Martin Nakashima, *California State Polytechnic University, Pomona*
Ho Kuen Ng, *San Jose State University*
Richard Nowakowski, *Dalhousie University*
Hussain S. Nur, *California State University, Fresno*
Norma Ortiz-Robinson, *Virginia Commonwealth University*
Wayne N. Palmer, *Utica College*
Vincent Panico, *University of the Pacific*
F. J. Papp, *University of Michigan–Dearborn*
Mike Penna, *Indiana University–Purdue University Indianapolis*
Mark Pinsky, *Northwestern University*
Lothar Redlin, *The Pennsylvania State University*
Joel W. Robbin, *University of Wisconsin–Madison*
Lila Roberts, *Georgia College and State University*
E. Arthur Robinson, Jr., *The George Washington University*
Richard Rockwell, *Pacific Union College*
Rob Root, *Lafayette College*
Richard Ruedemann, *Arizona State University*
David Ryeburn, *Simon Fraser University*
Richard St. Andre, *Central Michigan University*
Ricardo Salinas, *San Antonio College*
Robert Schmidt, *South Dakota State University*
Eric Schreiner, *Western Michigan University*
Mihr J. Shah, *Kent State University–Trumbull*
Qin Sheng, *Baylor University*
Theodore Shifrin, *University of Georgia*
Wayne Skrapek, *University of Saskatchewan*
Larry Small, *Los Angeles Pierce College*
Teresa Morgan Smith, *Blinn College*
William Smith, *University of North Carolina*
Donald W. Solomon, *University of Wisconsin–Milwaukee*
Edward Spitznagel, *Washington University*

Joseph Stampfli, *Indiana University*
Kristin Stoley, *Blinn College*
M. B. Tavakoli, *Chaffey College*
Magdalena Toda, *Texas Tech University*
Ruth Trygstad, *Salt Lake Community College*
Paul Xavier Uhlig, *St. Mary's University, San Antonio*
Stan Ver Nooy, *University of Oregon*
Andrei Verona, *California State University–Los Angeles*
Klaus Volpert, *Villanova University*
Russell C. Walker, *Carnegie Mellon University*
William L. Walton, *McCallie School*
Peiyong Wang, *Wayne State University*
Jack Weiner, *University of Guelph*
Alan Weinstein, *University of California, Berkeley*
Theodore W. Wilcox, *Rochester Institute of Technology*
Steven Willard, *University of Alberta*
Robert Wilson, *University of Wisconsin–Madison*
Jerome Wolbert, *University of Michigan–Ann Arbor*
Dennis H. Wortman, *University of Massachusetts, Boston*
Mary Wright, *Southern Illinois University–Carbondale*
Paul M. Wright, *Austin Community College*
Xian Wu, *University of South Carolina*

In addition, I would like to thank R. B. Burckel, Bruce Colletti, David Behrman, John Dersch, Gove Effinger, Bill Emerson, Dan Kalman, Quyan Khan, Alfonso Gracia-Saz, Allan MacIsaac, Tami Martin, Monica Nitsche, Lamia Raffo, Norton Starr, and Jim Trefzger for their suggestions; Al Shenk and Dennis Zill for permission to use exercises from their calculus texts; COMAP for permission to use project material; George Bergman, David Bleecker, Dan Clegg, Victor Kaftal, Anthony Lam, Jamie Lawson, Ira Rosenholtz, Paul Sally, Lowell Smylie, and Larry Wallen for ideas for exercises; Dan Drucker for the roller derby project; Thomas Banchoff, Tom Farmer, Fred Gass, John Ramsay, Larry Riddle, Philip Straffin, and Klaus Volpert for ideas for projects; Dan Anderson, Dan Clegg, Jeff Cole, Dan Drucker, and Barbara Frank for solving the new exercises and suggesting ways to improve them; Marv Riedesel and Mary Johnson for accuracy in proofreading; Andy Bulman-Fleming, Lothar Redlin, Gina Sanders, and Saleem Watson for additional proofreading; and Jeff Cole and Dan Clegg for their careful preparation and proofreading of the answer manuscript.

In addition, I thank those who have contributed to past editions: Ed Barbeau, George Bergman, Fred Brauer, Andy Bulman-Fleming, Bob Burton, David Cusick, Tom DiCiccio, Garret Etgen, Chris Fisher, Leon Gerber, Stuart Goldenberg, Arnold Good, Gene Hecht, Harvey Keynes, E. L. Koh, Zdislav Kovarik, Kevin Kreider, Emile LeBlanc, David Leep, Gerald Leibowitz, Larry Peterson, Mary Pugh, Lothar Redlin, Carl Riehm, John Ringland, Peter Rosenthal, Dusty Sabo, Doug Shaw, Dan Silver, Simon Smith, Saleem Watson, Alan Weinstein, and Gail Wolkowicz.

I also thank Kathi Townes, Stephanie Kuhns, Kristina Elliott, and Kira Abdallah of TECHarts for their production services and the following Cengage Learning staff: Cheryll Linthicum, content project manager; Stacy Green, senior content developer; Samantha Lugtu, associate content developer; Stephanie Kreuz, product assistant; Lynh Pham, media developer; Ryan Ahern, marketing manager; and Vernon Boes, art director. They have all done an outstanding job.

I have been very fortunate to have worked with some of the best mathematics editors in the business over the past three decades: Ron Munro, Harry Campbell, Craig Barth, Jeremy Hayhurst, Gary Ostedt, Bob Pirtle, Richard Stratton, Liz Covello, and now Neha Taleja. All of them have contributed greatly to the success of this book.

JAMES STEWART

Ancillaries for Instructors

Instructor's Guide

by Douglas Shaw

ISBN 978-1-305-39371-4

Each section of the text is discussed from several viewpoints. The Instructor's Guide contains suggested time to allot, points to stress, text discussion topics, core materials for lecture, workshop/discussion suggestions, group work exercises in a form suitable for handout, and suggested homework assignments.

Complete Solutions Manual

Single Variable Early Transcendentals

By Daniel Anderson, Jeffery A. Cole, and Daniel Drucker

ISBN 978-1-305-27239-2

Multivariable

By Dan Clegg and Barbara Frank

ISBN 978-1-305-27611-6

Includes worked-out solutions to all exercises in the text.

Printed Test Bank

By William Steven Harmon

ISBN 978-1-305-38722-5

Contains text-specific multiple-choice and free response test items.

Cengage Learning Testing Powered by Cognero

(login.cengage.com)

This flexible online system allows you to author, edit, and manage test bank content from multiple Cengage Learning solutions; create multiple test versions in an instant; and deliver tests from your LMS, your classroom, or wherever you want.

Ancillaries for Instructors and Students

Stewart Website

www.stewartcalculus.com

Contents: *Homework Hints* ■ *Algebra Review* ■ *Additional Topics* ■ *Drill exercises* ■ *Challenge Problems* ■ *Web Links* ■ *History of Mathematics* ■ *Tools for Enriching Calculus (TEC)*

TEC TOOLS FOR ENRICHING™ CALCULUS

By James Stewart, Harvey Keynes, Dan Clegg, and developer Hubert Hohn

Tools for Enriching Calculus (TEC) functions as both a powerful tool for instructors and as a tutorial environment in which students can explore and review selected topics. The Flash simulation modules in TEC include instructions, written and audio explanations of the concepts, and exercises. TEC is accessible in the eBook via CourseMate and Enhanced WebAssign. Selected Visuals and Modules are available at www.stewartcalculus.com.

Enhanced WebAssign®

www.webassign.net

Printed Access Code: ISBN 978-1-285-85826-5

Instant Access Code ISBN: 978-1-285-85825-8

Exclusively from Cengage Learning, Enhanced WebAssign offers an extensive online program for Stewart's Calculus *to encourage the practice that is so critical for concept mastery. The meticulously crafted pedagogy and exercises in our proven texts become even more effective in Enhanced WebAssign, supplemented by multimedia tutorial support and immediate feedback as students complete their assignments. Key features include:*

- *Thousands of homework problems that match your textbook's end-of-section exercises*
- *Opportunities for students to review prerequisite skills and content both at the start of the course and at the beginning of each section*
- Read It *eBook pages,* Watch It *videos,* Master It *tutorials, and* Chat About It *links*
- *A customizable Cengage* YouBook *with highlighting, note-taking, and search features, as well as links to multimedia resources*
- Personal Study Plans *(based on diagnostic quizzing) that identify chapter topics that students will need to master*
- *A WebAssign* Answer Evaluator *that recognizes and accepts equivalent mathematical responses in the same way an instructor grades*
- *A* Show My Work *feature that gives instructors the option of seeing students' detailed solutions*
- Visualizing Calculus Animations, Lecture Videos, *and more*

■ Electronic items ■ Printed items

(Table continues on page xxii)

Cengage Customizable YouBook

YouBook *is an eBook that is both interactive and customizable. Containing all the content from Stewart's* Calculus, *YouBook features a text edit tool that allows instructors to modify the textbook narrative as needed. With* YouBook, *instructors can quickly reorder entire sections and chapters or hide any content they don't teach to create an eBook that perfectly matches their syllabus. Instructors can further customize the text by adding instructor-created or YouTube video links. Additional media assets include animated figures, video clips, highlighting and note-taking features, and more. YouBook is available within Enhanced WebAssign.*

CourseMate

CourseMate is a perfect self-study tool for students, and requires no set up from instructors. CourseMate brings course concepts to life with interactive learning, study, and exam preparation tools that support the printed textbook. CourseMate for Stewart's Calculus *includes an interactive eBook, Tools for Enriching Calculus, videos, quizzes, flashcards, and more. For instructors, CourseMate includes Engagement Tracker, a first-of-its-kind tool that monitors student engagement.*

CengageBrain.com

To access additional course materials, please visit www.cengagebrain.com. *At the CengageBrain.com home page, search for the ISBN of your title (from the back cover of your book) using the search box at the top of the page. This will take you to the product page where these resources can be found.*

Ancillaries for Students

Student Solutions Manual

Single Variable Early Transcendentals

By Daniel Anderson, Jeffery A. Cole, and Daniel Drucker

ISBN 978-1-305-27242-2

Multivariable

By Dan Clegg and Barbara Frank

ISBN 978-1-305-27182-1

Provides completely worked-out solutions to all odd-numbered exercises in the text, giving students a chance to check their answer and ensure they took the correct steps to arrive at the answer. The Student Solutions Manual can be ordered or accessed online as an eBook at www.cengagebrain.com *by searching the ISBN.*

Study Guide

Single Variable Early Transcendentals

By Richard St. Andre

ISBN 978-1-305-27914-8

Multivariable

By Richard St. Andre

ISBN 978-1-305-27184-5

For each section of the text, the Study Guide provides students with a brief introduction, a short list of concepts to master, and summary and focus questions with explained answers. The Study Guide also contains "Technology Plus" questions and multiple-choice "On Your Own" exam-style questions. The Study Guide can be ordered or accessed online as an eBook at www.cengagebrain.com *by searching the ISBN.*

A Companion to Calculus

By Dennis Ebersole, Doris Schattschneider, Alicia Sevilla, and Kay Somers

ISBN 978-0-495-01124-8

Written to improve algebra and problem-solving skills of students taking a calculus course, every chapter in this companion is keyed to a calculus topic, providing conceptual background and specific algebra techniques needed to understand and solve calculus problems related to that topic. It is designed for calculus courses that integrate the review of precalculus concepts or for individual use. Order a copy of the text or access the eBook online at www.cengagebrain.com *by searching the ISBN.*

Linear Algebra for Calculus

by Konrad J. Heuvers, William P. Francis, John H. Kuisti, Deborah F. Lockhart, Daniel S. Moak, and Gene M. Ortner

ISBN 978-0-534-25248-9

This comprehensive book, designed to supplement the calculus course, provides an introduction to and review of the basic ideas of linear algebra. Order a copy of the text or access the eBook online at www.cengagebrain.com *by searching the ISBN.*

■ Electronic items ■ Printed items

To the Student

Reading a calculus textbook is different from reading a newspaper or a novel, or even a physics book. Don't be discouraged if you have to read a passage more than once in order to understand it. You should have pencil and paper and calculator at hand to sketch a diagram or make a calculation.

Some students start by trying their homework problems and read the text only if they get stuck on an exercise. I suggest that a far better plan is to read and understand a section of the text before attempting the exercises. In particular, you should look at the definitions to see the exact meanings of the terms. And before you read each example, I suggest that you cover up the solution and try solving the problem yourself. You'll get a lot more from looking at the solution if you do so.

Part of the aim of this course is to train you to think logically. Learn to write the solutions of the exercises in a connected, step-by-step fashion with explanatory sentences—not just a string of disconnected equations or formulas.

The answers to the odd-numbered exercises appear at the back of the book, in Appendix I. Some exercises ask for a verbal explanation or interpretation or description. In such cases there is no single correct way of expressing the answer, so don't worry that you haven't found the definitive answer. In addition, there are often several different forms in which to express a numerical or algebraic answer, so if your answer differs from mine, don't immediately assume you're wrong. For example, if the answer given in the back of the book is $\sqrt{2} - 1$ and you obtain $1/(1 + \sqrt{2})$, then you're right and rationalizing the denominator will show that the answers are equivalent.

The icon indicates an exercise that definitely requires the use of either a graphing calculator or a computer with graphing software. But that doesn't mean that graphing devices can't be used to check your work on the other exercises as well. The symbol CAS is reserved for problems in which the full resources of a computer algebra system (like Maple, Mathematica, or the TI-89) are required.

You will also encounter the symbol ⊘, which warns you against committing an error. I have placed this symbol in the margin in situations where I have observed that a large proportion of my students tend to make the same mistake.

Tools for Enriching Calculus, which is a companion to this text, is referred to by means of the symbol TEC and can be accessed in the eBook via Enhanced WebAssign and CourseMate (selected Visuals and Modules are available at www.stewartcalculus.com). It directs you to modules in which you can explore aspects of calculus for which the computer is particularly useful.

You will notice that some exercise numbers are printed in red: 5. This indicates that *Homework Hints* are available for the exercise. These hints can be found on stewartcalculus.com as well as Enhanced WebAssign and CourseMate. The homework hints ask you questions that allow you to make progress toward a solution without actually giving you the answer. You need to pursue each hint in an active manner with pencil and paper to work out the details. If a particular hint doesn't enable you to solve the problem, you can click to reveal the next hint.

I recommend that you keep this book for reference purposes after you finish the course. Because you will likely forget some of the specific details of calculus, the book will serve as a useful reminder when you need to use calculus in subsequent courses. And, because this book contains more material than can be covered in any one course, it can also serve as a valuable resource for a working scientist or engineer.

Calculus is an exciting subject, justly considered to be one of the greatest achievements of the human intellect. I hope you will discover that it is not only useful but also intrinsically beautiful.

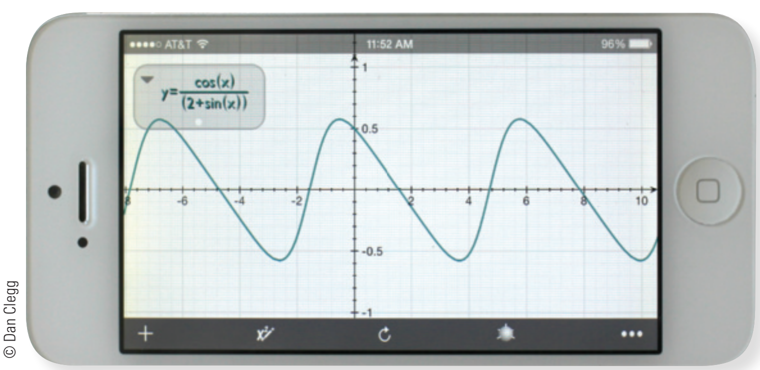
JAMES STEWART

Calculators, Computers, and Other Graphing Devices

© Dan Clegg

Advances in technology continue to bring a wider variety of tools for doing mathematics. Handheld calculators are becoming more powerful, as are software programs and Internet resources. In addition, many mathematical applications have been released for smartphones and tablets such as the iPad.

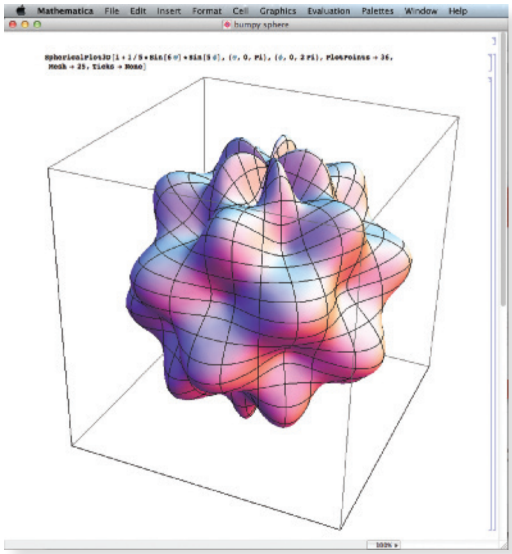
Some exercises in this text are marked with a graphing icon, which indicates that the use of some technology is required. Often this means that we intend for a graphing device to be used in drawing the graph of a function or equation. You might also need technology to find the zeros of a graph or the points of intersection of two graphs. In some cases we will use a calculating device to solve an equation or evaluate a definite integral numerically. Many scientific and graphing calculators have these features built in, such as the Texas Instruments TI-84 or TI-Nspire CX. Similar calculators are made by Hewlett Packard, Casio, and Sharp.



© Dan Clegg

You can also use computer software such as *Graphing Calculator* by Pacific Tech (www.pacifict.com) to perform many of these functions, as well as apps for phones and tablets, like Quick Graph (Colombiamug) or Math-Studio (Pomegranate Apps). Similar functionality is available using a web interface at WolframAlpha.com.

© Dan Clegg



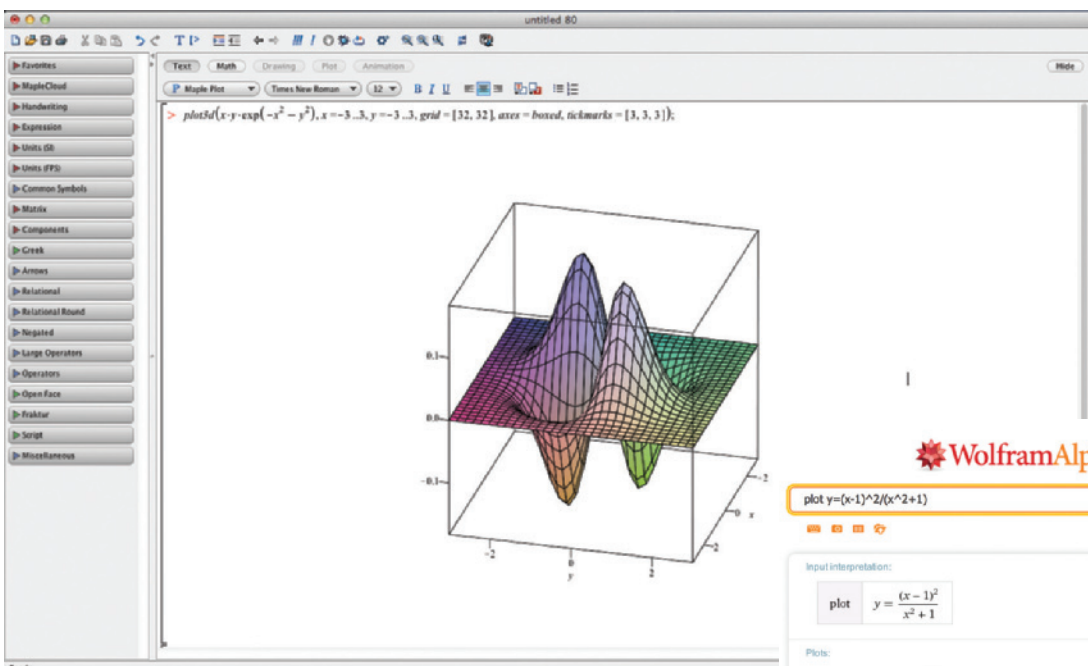
© Dan Clegg

In general, when we use the term "calculator" in this book, we mean the use of any of the resources we have mentioned.

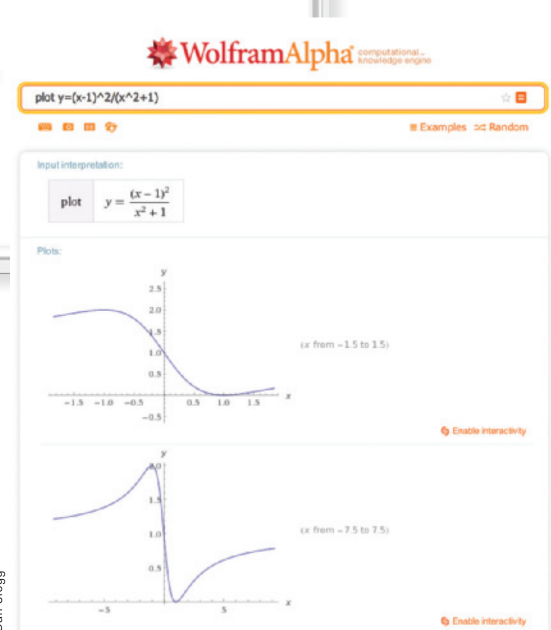
The CAS icon is reserved for problems in which the full resources of a *computer algebra system* (CAS) are required. A CAS is capable of doing mathematics (like solving equations, computing derivatives or integrals) *symbolically* rather than just numerically.

Examples of well-established computer algebra systems are the computer software packages Maple and Mathematica. The WolframAlpha website uses the Mathematica engine to provide CAS functionality via the Web.

Many handheld graphing calculators have CAS capabilities, such as the TI-89 and TI-Nspire CX CAS from Texas Instruments. Some tablet and smartphone apps also provide these capabilities, such as the previously mentioned MathStudio.



© Dan Clegg



© Dan Clegg

Diagnostic Tests

Success in calculus depends to a large extent on knowledge of the mathematics that precedes calculus: algebra, analytic geometry, functions, and trigonometry. The following tests are intended to diagnose weaknesses that you might have in these areas. After taking each test you can check your answers against the given answers and, if necessary, refresh your skills by referring to the review materials that are provided.

A Diagnostic Test: Algebra

1. Evaluate each expression without using a calculator.

(a) $(-3)^4$ (b) -3^4 (c) 3^{-4}

(d) $\dfrac{5^{23}}{5^{21}}$ (e) $\left(\dfrac{2}{3}\right)^{-2}$ (f) $16^{-3/4}$

2. Simplify each expression. Write your answer without negative exponents.

(a) $\sqrt{200} - \sqrt{32}$

(b) $(3a^3b^3)(4ab^2)^2$

(c) $\left(\dfrac{3x^{3/2}y^3}{x^2y^{-1/2}}\right)^{-2}$

3. Expand and simplify.

(a) $3(x + 6) + 4(2x - 5)$ (b) $(x + 3)(4x - 5)$

(c) $\left(\sqrt{a} + \sqrt{b}\right)\left(\sqrt{a} - \sqrt{b}\right)$ (d) $(2x + 3)^2$

(e) $(x + 2)^3$

4. Factor each expression.

(a) $4x^2 - 25$ (b) $2x^2 + 5x - 12$

(c) $x^3 - 3x^2 - 4x + 12$ (d) $x^4 + 27x$

(e) $3x^{3/2} - 9x^{1/2} + 6x^{-1/2}$ (f) $x^3y - 4xy$

5. Simplify the rational expression.

(a) $\dfrac{x^2 + 3x + 2}{x^2 - x - 2}$ (b) $\dfrac{2x^2 - x - 1}{x^2 - 9} \cdot \dfrac{x + 3}{2x + 1}$

(c) $\dfrac{x^2}{x^2 - 4} - \dfrac{x + 1}{x + 2}$ (d) $\dfrac{\dfrac{y}{x} - \dfrac{x}{y}}{\dfrac{1}{y} - \dfrac{1}{x}}$

6. Rationalize the expression and simplify.

(a) $\dfrac{\sqrt{10}}{\sqrt{5}-2}$ (b) $\dfrac{\sqrt{4+h}-2}{h}$

7. Rewrite by completing the square.

(a) x^2+x+1 (b) $2x^2-12x+11$

8. Solve the equation. (Find only the real solutions.)

(a) $x+5=14-\frac{1}{2}x$ (b) $\dfrac{2x}{x+1}=\dfrac{2x-1}{x}$

(c) $x^2-x-12=0$ (d) $2x^2+4x+1=0$

(e) $x^4-3x^2+2=0$ (f) $3|x-4|=10$

(g) $2x(4-x)^{-1/2}-3\sqrt{4-x}=0$

9. Solve each inequality. Write your answer using interval notation.

(a) $-4<5-3x\leqslant 17$ (b) $x^2<2x+8$

(c) $x(x-1)(x+2)>0$ (d) $|x-4|<3$

(e) $\dfrac{2x-3}{x+1}\leqslant 1$

10. State whether each equation is true or false.

(a) $(p+q)^2=p^2+q^2$ (b) $\sqrt{ab}=\sqrt{a}\sqrt{b}$

(c) $\sqrt{a^2+b^2}=a+b$ (d) $\dfrac{1+TC}{C}=1+T$

(e) $\dfrac{1}{x-y}=\dfrac{1}{x}-\dfrac{1}{y}$ (f) $\dfrac{1/x}{a/x-b/x}=\dfrac{1}{a-b}$

ANSWERS TO DIAGNOSTIC TEST A: ALGEBRA

1. (a) 81 (b) -81 (c) $\frac{1}{81}$
(d) 25 (e) $\frac{9}{4}$ (f) $\frac{1}{8}$

2. (a) $6\sqrt{2}$ (b) $48a^5b^7$ (c) $\dfrac{x}{9y^7}$

3. (a) $11x-2$ (b) $4x^2+7x-15$
(c) $a-b$ (d) $4x^2+12x+9$
(e) $x^3+6x^2+12x+8$

4. (a) $(2x-5)(2x+5)$ (b) $(2x-3)(x+4)$
(c) $(x-3)(x-2)(x+2)$ (d) $x(x+3)(x^2-3x+9)$
(e) $3x^{-1/2}(x-1)(x-2)$ (f) $xy(x-2)(x+2)$

5. (a) $\dfrac{x+2}{x-2}$ (b) $\dfrac{x-1}{x-3}$
(c) $\dfrac{1}{x-2}$ (d) $-(x+y)$

6. (a) $5\sqrt{2}+2\sqrt{10}$ (b) $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{4+h}+2}$

7. (a) $\left(x+\frac{1}{2}\right)^2+\frac{3}{4}$ (b) $2(x-3)^2-7$

8. (a) 6 (b) 1 (c) $-3, 4$
(d) $-1\pm\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$ (e) $\pm1, \pm\sqrt{2}$ (f) $\frac{2}{3}, \frac{22}{3}$
(g) $\frac{12}{5}$

9. (a) $[-4, 3)$ (b) $(-2, 4)$
(c) $(-2, 0)\cup(1, \infty)$ (d) $(1, 7)$
(e) $(-1, 4]$

10. (a) False (b) True (c) False
(d) False (e) False (f) True

If you had difficulty with these problems, you may wish to consult the Review of Algebra on the website **www.stewartcalculus.com**.

B Diagnostic Test: Analytic Geometry

1. Find an equation for the line that passes through the point $(2, -5)$ and
(a) has slope -3
(b) is parallel to the x-axis
(c) is parallel to the y-axis
(d) is parallel to the line $2x - 4y = 3$

2. Find an equation for the circle that has center $(-1, 4)$ and passes through the point $(3, -2)$.

3. Find the center and radius of the circle with equation $x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 10y + 9 = 0$.

4. Let $A(-7, 4)$ and $B(5, -12)$ be points in the plane.
(a) Find the slope of the line that contains A and B.
(b) Find an equation of the line that passes through A and B. What are the intercepts?
(c) Find the midpoint of the segment AB.
(d) Find the length of the segment AB.
(e) Find an equation of the perpendicular bisector of AB.
(f) Find an equation of the circle for which AB is a diameter.

5. Sketch the region in the xy-plane defined by the equation or inequalities.
(a) $-1 \leqslant y \leqslant 3$
(b) $|x| < 4$ and $|y| < 2$
(c) $y < 1 - \frac{1}{2}x$
(d) $y \geqslant x^2 - 1$
(e) $x^2 + y^2 < 4$
(f) $9x^2 + 16y^2 = 144$

ANSWERS TO DIAGNOSTIC TEST B: ANALYTIC GEOMETRY

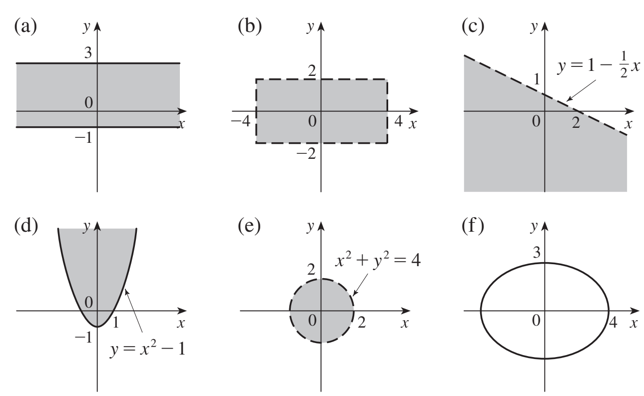
1. (a) $y = -3x + 1$ (b) $y = -5$
(c) $x = 2$ (d) $y = \frac{1}{2}x - 6$

2. $(x + 1)^2 + (y - 4)^2 = 52$

3. Center $(3, -5)$, radius 5

4. (a) $-\frac{4}{3}$
(b) $4x + 3y + 16 = 0$; x-intercept -4, y-intercept $-\frac{16}{3}$
(c) $(-1, -4)$
(d) 20
(e) $3x - 4y = 13$
(f) $(x + 1)^2 + (y + 4)^2 = 100$

5.



If you had difficulty with these problems, you may wish to consult the review of analytic geometry in Appendixes B and C.

C Diagnostic Test: Functions

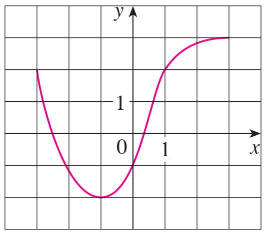


FIGURE FOR PROBLEM 1

1. The graph of a function f is given at the left.
(a) State the value of $f(-1)$.
(b) Estimate the value of $f(2)$.
(c) For what values of x is $f(x) = 2$?
(d) Estimate the values of x such that $f(x) = 0$.
(e) State the domain and range of f.

2. If $f(x) = x^3$, evaluate the difference quotient $\dfrac{f(2 + h) - f(2)}{h}$ and simplify your answer.

3. Find the domain of the function.
(a) $f(x) = \dfrac{2x + 1}{x^2 + x - 2}$ (b) $g(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt[3]{x}}{x^2 + 1}$ (c) $h(x) = \sqrt{4 - x} + \sqrt{x^2 - 1}$

4. How are graphs of the functions obtained from the graph of f?
(a) $y = -f(x)$ (b) $y = 2f(x) - 1$ (c) $y = f(x - 3) + 2$

5. Without using a calculator, make a rough sketch of the graph.
(a) $y = x^3$ (b) $y = (x + 1)^3$ (c) $y = (x - 2)^3 + 3$
(d) $y = 4 - x^2$ (e) $y = \sqrt{x}$ (f) $y = 2\sqrt{x}$
(g) $y = -2^x$ (h) $y = 1 + x^{-1}$

6. Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - x^2 & \text{if } x \leqslant 0 \\ 2x + 1 & \text{if } x > 0 \end{cases}$
(a) Evaluate $f(-2)$ and $f(1)$. (b) Sketch the graph of f.

7. If $f(x) = x^2 + 2x - 1$ and $g(x) = 2x - 3$, find each of the following functions.
(a) $f \circ g$ (b) $g \circ f$ (c) $g \circ g \circ g$

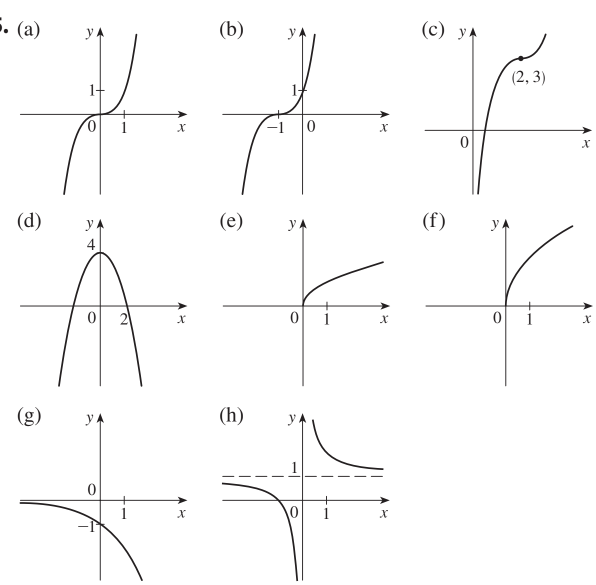
ANSWERS TO DIAGNOSTIC TEST C: FUNCTIONS

1. (a) -2 (b) 2.8
(c) $-3, 1$ (d) $-2.5, 0.3$
(e) $[-3, 3], [-2, 3]$

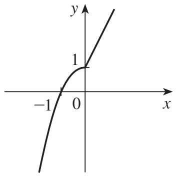
2. $12 + 6h + h^2$

3. (a) $(-\infty, -2) \cup (-2, 1) \cup (1, \infty)$
(b) $(-\infty, \infty)$
(c) $(-\infty, -1] \cup [1, 4]$

4. (a) Reflect about the x-axis
(b) Stretch vertically by a factor of 2, then shift 1 unit downward
(c) Shift 3 units to the right and 2 units upward

5.


6. (a) $-3, 3$ (b)



7. (a) $(f \circ g)(x) = 4x^2 - 8x + 2$
(b) $(g \circ f)(x) = 2x^2 + 4x - 5$
(c) $(g \circ g \circ g)(x) = 8x - 21$

If you had difficulty with these problems, you should look at sections 1.1–1.3 of this book.

D Diagnostic Test: Trigonometry

1. Convert from degrees to radians.
(a) $300°$ (b) $-18°$

2. Convert from radians to degrees.
(a) $5\pi/6$ (b) 2

3. Find the length of an arc of a circle with radius 12 cm if the arc subtends a central angle of 30°.

4. Find the exact values.
(a) $\tan(\pi/3)$ (b) $\sin(7\pi/6)$ (c) $\sec(5\pi/3)$

5. Express the lengths a and b in the figure in terms of θ.

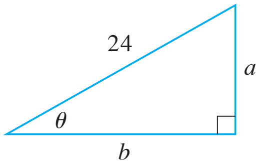


FIGURE FOR PROBLEM 5

6. If $\sin x = \frac{1}{3}$ and $\sec y = \frac{5}{4}$, where x and y lie between 0 and $\pi/2$, evaluate $\sin(x + y)$.

7. Prove the identities.
(a) $\tan\theta \sin\theta + \cos\theta = \sec\theta$ (b) $\dfrac{2\tan x}{1 + \tan^2 x} = \sin 2x$

8. Find all values of x such that $\sin 2x = \sin x$ and $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$.

9. Sketch the graph of the function $y = 1 + \sin 2x$ without using a calculator.

ANSWERS TO DIAGNOSTIC TEST D: TRIGONOMETRY

1. (a) $5\pi/3$ (b) $-\pi/10$

2. (a) $150°$ (b) $360°/\pi \approx 114.6°$

3. 2π cm

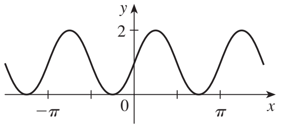
4. (a) $\sqrt{3}$ (b) $-\frac{1}{2}$ (c) 2

5. (a) $24\sin\theta$ (b) $24\cos\theta$

6. $\frac{1}{15}\left(4 + 6\sqrt{2}\right)$

8. $0, \pi/3, \pi, 5\pi/3, 2\pi$

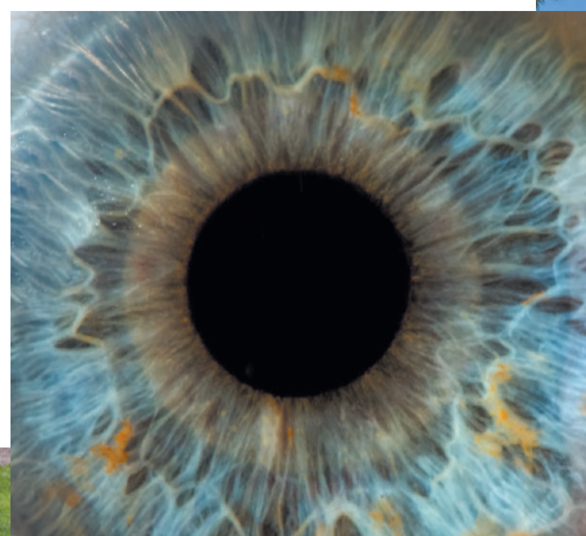
9.



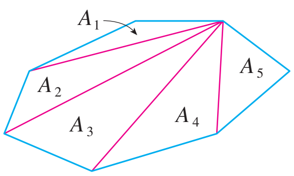
If you had difficulty with these problems, you should look at Appendix D of this book.

A Preview of Calculus

By the time you finish this course, you will be able to calculate the length of the curve used to design the Gateway Arch in St. Louis, determine where a pilot should start descent for a smooth landing, compute the force on a baseball bat when it strikes the ball, and measure the amount of light sensed by the human eye as the pupil changes size.



CALCULUS IS FUNDAMENTALLY DIFFERENT FROM the mathematics that you have studied previously: calculus is less static and more dynamic. It is concerned with change and motion; it deals with quantities that approach other quantities. For that reason it may be useful to have an overview of the subject before beginning its intensive study. Here we give a glimpse of some of the main ideas of calculus by showing how the concept of a limit arises when we attempt to solve a variety of problems.



$A = A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_4 + A_5$

FIGURE 1

The Area Problem

The origins of calculus go back at least 2500 years to the ancient Greeks, who found areas using the "method of exhaustion." They knew how to find the area A of any polygon by dividing it into triangles as in Figure 1 and adding the areas of these triangles.

It is a much more difficult problem to find the area of a curved figure. The Greek method of exhaustion was to inscribe polygons in the figure and circumscribe polygons about the figure and then let the number of sides of the polygons increase. Figure 2 illustrates this process for the special case of a circle with inscribed regular polygons.

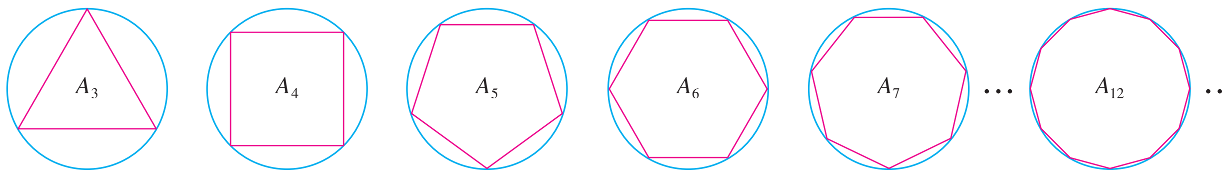


FIGURE 2

Let A_n be the area of the inscribed polygon with n sides. As n increases, it appears that A_n becomes closer and closer to the area of the circle. We say that the area of the circle is the limit of the areas of the inscribed polygons, and we write

$$A = \lim_{n \to \infty} A_n$$

TEC In the Preview Visual, you can see how areas of inscribed and circumscribed polygons approximate the area of a circle.

The Greeks themselves did not use limits explicitly. However, by indirect reasoning, Eudoxus (fifth century BC) used exhaustion to prove the familiar formula for the area of a circle: $A = \pi r^2$.

We will use a similar idea in Chapter 5 to find areas of regions of the type shown in Figure 3. We will approximate the desired area A by areas of rectangles (as in Figure 4), let the width of the rectangles decrease, and then calculate A as the limit of these sums of areas of rectangles.

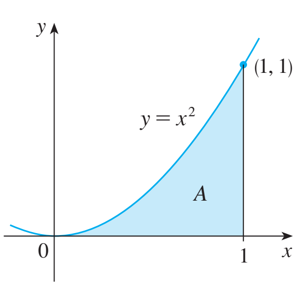


FIGURE 3

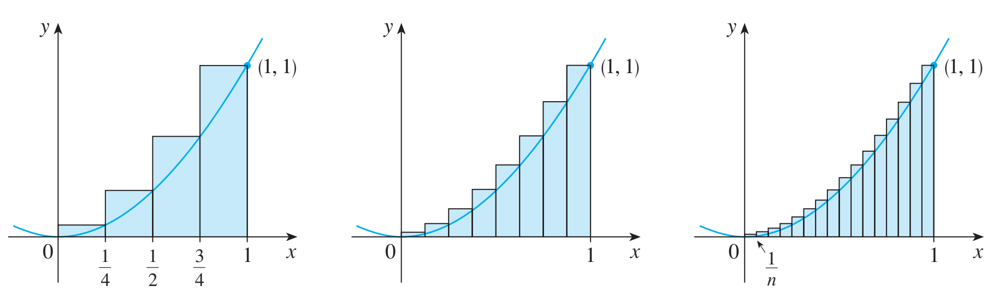


FIGURE 4

The area problem is the central problem in the branch of calculus called *integral calculus*. The techniques that we will develop in Chapter 5 for finding areas will also enable us to compute the volume of a solid, the length of a curve, the force of water against a dam, the mass and center of gravity of a rod, and the work done in pumping water out of a tank.

The Tangent Problem

Consider the problem of trying to find an equation of the tangent line t to a curve with equation $y = f(x)$ at a given point P. (We will give a precise definition of a tangent line in

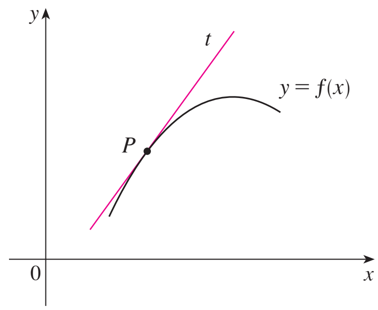


FIGURE 5
The tangent line at P

Chapter 2. For now you can think of it as a line that touches the curve at P as in Figure 5.) Since we know that the point P lies on the tangent line, we can find the equation of t if we know its slope m. The problem is that we need two points to compute the slope and we know only one point, P, on t. To get around the problem we first find an approximation to m by taking a nearby point Q on the curve and computing the slope m_{PQ} of the secant line PQ. From Figure 6 we see that

$$\boxed{1} \qquad m_{PQ} = \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}$$

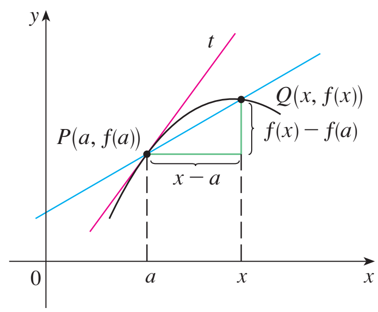


FIGURE 6
The secant line at PQ

Now imagine that Q moves along the curve toward P as in Figure 7. You can see that the secant line rotates and approaches the tangent line as its limiting position. This means that the slope m_{PQ} of the secant line becomes closer and closer to the slope m of the tangent line. We write

$$m = \lim_{Q \to P} m_{PQ}$$

and we say that m is the limit of m_{PQ} as Q approaches P along the curve. Because x approaches a as Q approaches P, we could also use Equation 1 to write

$$\boxed{2} \qquad m = \lim_{x \to a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}$$

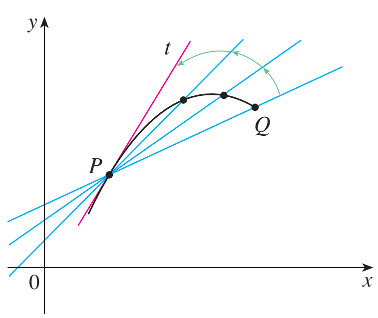


FIGURE 7
Secant lines approaching the tangent line

Specific examples of this procedure will be given in Chapter 2.

The tangent problem has given rise to the branch of calculus called *differential calculus,* which was not invented until more than 2000 years after integral calculus. The main ideas behind differential calculus are due to the French mathematician Pierre Fermat (1601–1665) and were developed by the English mathematicians John Wallis (1616–1703), Isaac Barrow (1630–1677), and Isaac Newton (1642–1727) and the German mathematician Gottfried Leibniz (1646–1716).

The two branches of calculus and their chief problems, the area problem and the tangent problem, appear to be very different, but it turns out that there is a very close connection between them. The tangent problem and the area problem are inverse problems in a sense that will be described in Chapter 5.

Velocity

When we look at the speedometer of a car and read that the car is traveling at 48 mi/h, what does that information indicate to us? We know that if the velocity remains constant, then after an hour we will have traveled 48 mi. But if the velocity of the car varies, what does it mean to say that the velocity at a given instant is 48 mi/h?

In order to analyze this question, let's examine the motion of a car that travels along a straight road and assume that we can measure the distance traveled by the car (in feet) at l-second intervals as in the following chart:

t = Time elapsed (s)	0	1	2	3	4	5
d = Distance (ft)	0	2	9	24	42	71

As a first step toward finding the velocity after 2 seconds have elapsed, we find the average velocity during the time interval $2 \leqslant t \leqslant 4$:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{average velocity} &= \frac{\text{change in position}}{\text{time elapsed}}\\ &= \frac{42-9}{4-2}\\ &= 16.5 \text{ ft/s}\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, the average velocity in the time interval $2 \leqslant t \leqslant 3$ is

$$\text{average velocity} = \frac{24-9}{3-2} = 15 \text{ ft/s}$$

We have the feeling that the velocity at the instant $t = 2$ can't be much different from the average velocity during a short time interval starting at $t = 2$. So let's imagine that the distance traveled has been measured at 0.1-second time intervals as in the following chart:

t	2.0	2.1	2.2	2.3	2.4	2.5
d	9.00	10.02	11.16	12.45	13.96	15.80

Then we can compute, for instance, the average velocity over the time interval [2, 2.5]:

$$\text{average velocity} = \frac{15.80 - 9.00}{2.5 - 2} = 13.6 \text{ ft/s}$$

The results of such calculations are shown in the following chart:

Time interval	[2, 3]	[2, 2.5]	[2, 2.4]	[2, 2.3]	[2, 2.2]	[2, 2.1]
Average velocity (ft/s)	15.0	13.6	12.4	11.5	10.8	10.2

The average velocities over successively smaller intervals appear to be getting closer to a number near 10, and so we expect that the velocity at exactly $t = 2$ is about 10 ft/s. In Chapter 2 we will define the instantaneous velocity of a moving object as the limiting value of the average velocities over smaller and smaller time intervals.

In Figure 8 we show a graphical representation of the motion of the car by plotting the distance traveled as a function of time. If we write $d = f(t)$, then $f(t)$ is the number of feet traveled after t seconds. The average velocity in the time interval $[2, t]$ is

$$\text{average velocity} = \frac{\text{change in position}}{\text{time elapsed}} = \frac{f(t) - f(2)}{t - 2}$$

which is the same as the slope of the secant line PQ in Figure 8. The velocity v when $t = 2$ is the limiting value of this average velocity as t approaches 2; that is,

$$v = \lim_{t \to 2} \frac{f(t) - f(2)}{t - 2}$$

and we recognize from Equation 2 that this is the same as the slope of the tangent line to the curve at P.

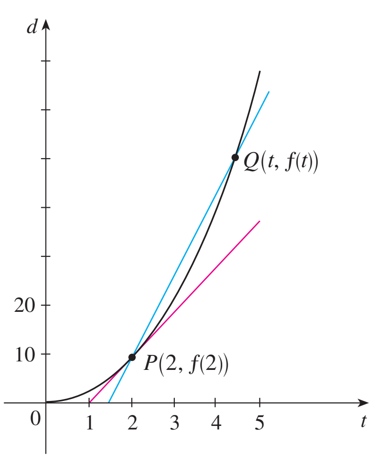


FIGURE 8

Thus, when we solve the tangent problem in differential calculus, we are also solving problems concerning velocities. The same techniques also enable us to solve problems involving rates of change in all of the natural and social sciences.

The Limit of a Sequence

In the fifth century BC the Greek philosopher Zeno of Elea posed four problems, now known as *Zeno's paradoxes*, that were intended to challenge some of the ideas concerning space and time that were held in his day. Zeno's second paradox concerns a race between the Greek hero Achilles and a tortoise that has been given a head start. Zeno argued, as follows, that Achilles could never pass the tortoise: Suppose that Achilles starts at position a_1 and the tortoise starts at position t_1. (See Figure 9.) When Achilles reaches the point $a_2 = t_1$, the tortoise is farther ahead at position t_2. When Achilles reaches $a_3 = t_2$, the tortoise is at t_3. This process continues indefinitely and so it appears that the tortoise will always be ahead! But this defies common sense.

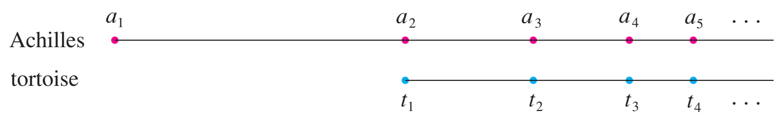


FIGURE 9

One way of explaining this paradox is with the idea of a *sequence*. The successive positions of Achilles $(a_1, a_2, a_3, \ldots)$ or the successive positions of the tortoise $(t_1, t_2, t_3, \ldots)$ form what is known as a sequence.

In general, a sequence $\{a_n\}$ is a set of numbers written in a definite order. For instance, the sequence

$$\left\{1, \tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{1}{3}, \tfrac{1}{4}, \tfrac{1}{5}, \ldots\right\}$$

can be described by giving the following formula for the nth term:

$$a_n = \frac{1}{n}$$

We can visualize this sequence by plotting its terms on a number line as in Figure 10(a) or by drawing its graph as in Figure 10(b). Observe from either picture that the terms of the sequence $a_n = 1/n$ are becoming closer and closer to 0 as n increases. In fact, we can find terms as small as we please by making n large enough. We say that the limit of the sequence is 0, and we indicate this by writing

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{1}{n} = 0$$

In general, the notation

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} a_n = L$$

is used if the terms a_n approach the number L as n becomes large. This means that the numbers a_n can be made as close as we like to the number L by taking n sufficiently large.

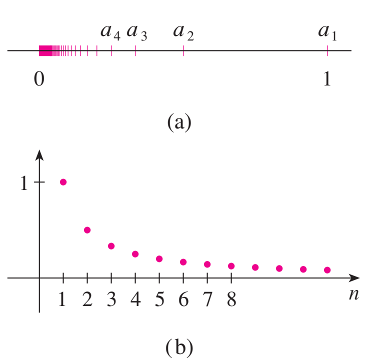


FIGURE 10

The concept of the limit of a sequence occurs whenever we use the decimal representation of a real number. For instance, if

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= 3.1 \\ a_2 &= 3.14 \\ a_3 &= 3.141 \\ a_4 &= 3.1415 \\ a_5 &= 3.14159 \\ a_6 &= 3.141592 \\ a_7 &= 3.1415926 \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

then $$\lim_{n \to \infty} a_n = \pi$$

The terms in this sequence are rational approximations to π.

Let's return to Zeno's paradox. The successive positions of Achilles and the tortoise form sequences $\{a_n\}$ and $\{t_n\}$, where $a_n < t_n$ for all n. It can be shown that both sequences have the same limit:

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} a_n = p = \lim_{n \to \infty} t_n$$

It is precisely at this point p that Achilles overtakes the tortoise.

The Sum of a Series

Another of Zeno's paradoxes, as passed on to us by Aristotle, is the following: "A man standing in a room cannot walk to the wall. In order to do so, he would first have to go half the distance, then half the remaining distance, and then again half of what still remains. This process can always be continued and can never be ended." (See Figure 11.)

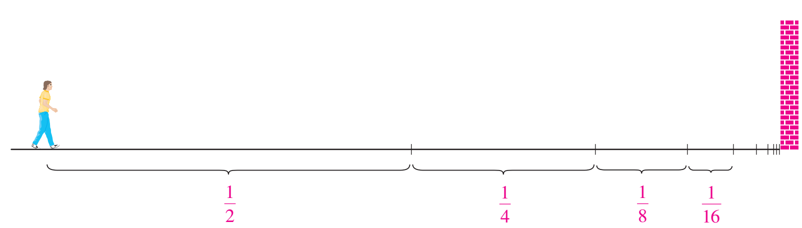


FIGURE 11

Of course, we know that the man can actually reach the wall, so this suggests that perhaps the total distance can be expressed as the sum of infinitely many smaller distances as follows:

$$\boxed{3} \qquad 1 = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{16} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^n} + \cdots$$

Zeno was arguing that it doesn't make sense to add infinitely many numbers together. But there are other situations in which we implicitly use infinite sums. For instance, in decimal notation, the symbol $0.\overline{3} = 0.3333\ldots$ means

$$\frac{3}{10} + \frac{3}{100} + \frac{3}{1000} + \frac{3}{10{,}000} + \cdots$$

and so, in some sense, it must be true that

$$\frac{3}{10} + \frac{3}{100} + \frac{3}{1000} + \frac{3}{10{,}000} + \cdots = \frac{1}{3}$$

More generally, if d_n denotes the nth digit in the decimal representation of a number, then

$$0.d_1d_2d_3d_4\ldots = \frac{d_1}{10} + \frac{d_2}{10^2} + \frac{d_3}{10^3} + \cdots + \frac{d_n}{10^n} + \cdots$$

Therefore some infinite sums, or infinite series as they are called, have a meaning. But we must define carefully what the sum of an infinite series is.

Returning to the series in Equation 3, we denote by s_n the sum of the first n terms of the series. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}
s_1 &= \tfrac{1}{2} = 0.5 \\
s_2 &= \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{4} = 0.75 \\
s_3 &= \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{4} + \tfrac{1}{8} = 0.875 \\
s_4 &= \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{4} + \tfrac{1}{8} + \tfrac{1}{16} = 0.9375 \\
s_5 &= \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{4} + \tfrac{1}{8} + \tfrac{1}{16} + \tfrac{1}{32} = 0.96875 \\
s_6 &= \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{4} + \tfrac{1}{8} + \tfrac{1}{16} + \tfrac{1}{32} + \tfrac{1}{64} = 0.984375 \\
s_7 &= \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{4} + \tfrac{1}{8} + \tfrac{1}{16} + \tfrac{1}{32} + \tfrac{1}{64} + \tfrac{1}{128} = 0.9921875 \\
&\;\vdots \\
s_{10} &= \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{4} + \cdots + \tfrac{1}{1024} \approx 0.99902344 \\
&\;\vdots \\
s_{16} &= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^{16}} \approx 0.99998474
\end{aligned}$$

Observe that as we add more and more terms, the partial sums become closer and closer to 1. In fact, it can be shown that by taking n large enough (that is, by adding sufficiently many terms of the series), we can make the partial sum s_n as close as we please to the number 1. It therefore seems reasonable to say that the sum of the infinite series is 1 and to write

$$\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^n} + \cdots = 1$$

In other words, the reason the sum of the series is 1 is that

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} s_n = 1$$

In Chapter 11 we will discuss these ideas further. We will then use Newton's idea of combining infinite series with differential and integral calculus.

Summary

We have seen that the concept of a limit arises in trying to find the area of a region, the slope of a tangent to a curve, the velocity of a car, or the sum of an infinite series. In each case the common theme is the calculation of a quantity as the limit of other, easily calculated quantities. It is this basic idea of a limit that sets calculus apart from other areas of mathematics. In fact, we could define calculus as the part of mathematics that deals with limits.

After Sir Isaac Newton invented his version of calculus, he used it to explain the motion of the planets around the sun. Today calculus is used in calculating the orbits of satellites and spacecraft, in predicting population sizes, in estimating how fast oil prices rise or fall, in forecasting weather, in measuring the cardiac output of the heart, in calculating life insurance premiums, and in a great variety of other areas. We will explore some of these uses of calculus in this book.

In order to convey a sense of the power of the subject, we end this preview with a list of some of the questions that you will be able to answer using calculus:

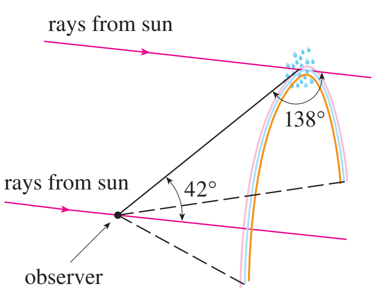
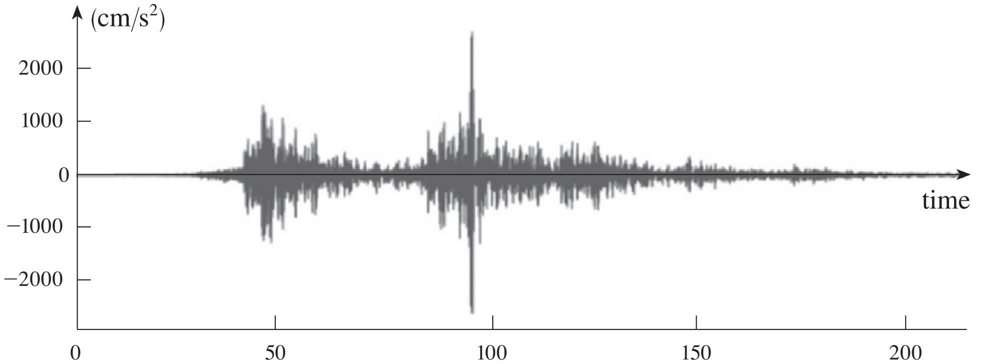


FIGURE 12

1. How can we explain the fact, illustrated in Figure 12, that the angle of elevation from an observer up to the highest point in a rainbow is 42°? (See page 285.)
2. How can we explain the shapes of cans on supermarket shelves? (See page 343.)
3. Where is the best place to sit in a movie theater? (See page 465.)
4. How can we design a roller coaster for a smooth ride? (See page 182.)
5. How far away from an airport should a pilot start descent? (See page 208.)
6. How can we fit curves together to design shapes to represent letters on a laser printer? (See page 657.)
7. How can we estimate the number of workers that were needed to build the Great Pyramid of Khufu in ancient Egypt? (See page 460.)
8. Where should an infielder position himself to catch a baseball thrown by an outfielder and relay it to home plate? (See page 465.)
9. Does a ball thrown upward take longer to reach its maximum height or to fall back to its original height? (See page 609.)
10. How can we explain the fact that planets and satellites move in elliptical orbits? (See page 868.)
11. How can we distribute water flow among turbines at a hydroelectric station so as to maximize the total energy production? (See page 980.)
12. If a marble, a squash ball, a steel bar, and a lead pipe roll down a slope, which of them reaches the bottom first? (See page 1052.)

1 Functions and Models

Pictura Collectus/Alamy



Seismological Society of America

Often a graph is the best way to represent a function because it conveys so much information at a glance. Shown is a graph of the vertical ground acceleration created by the 2011 earthquake near Tohoku, Japan. The earthquake had a magnitude of 9.0 on the Richter scale and was so powerful that it moved northern Japan 8 feet closer to North America.

THE FUNDAMENTAL OBJECTS THAT WE deal with in calculus are functions. This chapter prepares the way for calculus by discussing the basic ideas concerning functions, their graphs, and ways of transforming and combining them. We stress that a function can be represented in different ways: by an equation, in a table, by a graph, or in words. We look at the main types of functions that occur in calculus and describe the process of using these functions as mathematical models of real-world phenomena.

1.1 Four Ways to Represent a Function

Functions arise whenever one quantity depends on another. Consider the following four situations.

A. The area A of a circle depends on the radius r of the circle. The rule that connects r and A is given by the equation $A = \pi r^2$. With each positive number r there is associated one value of A, and we say that A is a *function* of r.

B. The human population of the world P depends on the time t. The table gives estimates of the world population $P(t)$ at time t, for certain years. For instance,

$$P(1950) \approx 2{,}560{,}000{,}000$$

But for each value of the time t there is a corresponding value of P, and we say that P is a function of t.

Year	Population (millions)
1900	1650
1910	1750
1920	1860
1930	2070
1940	2300
1950	2560
1960	3040
1970	3710
1980	4450
1990	5280
2000	6080
2010	6870

C. The cost C of mailing an envelope depends on its weight w. Although there is no simple formula that connects w and C, the post office has a rule for determining C when w is known.

D. The vertical acceleration a of the ground as measured by a seismograph during an earthquake is a function of the elapsed time t. Figure 1 shows a graph generated by seismic activity during the Northridge earthquake that shook Los Angeles in 1994. For a given value of t, the graph provides a corresponding value of a.

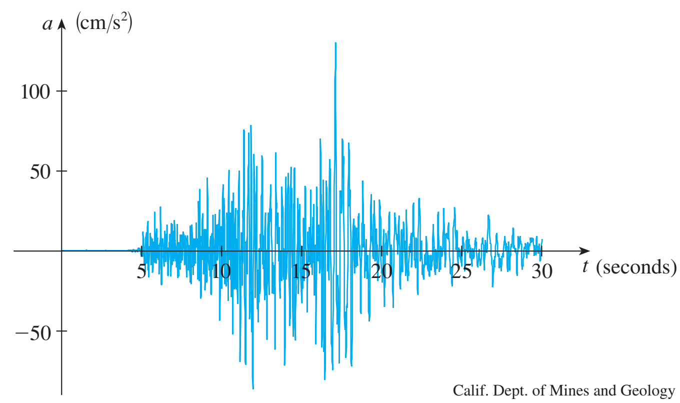


FIGURE 1
Vertical ground acceleration during the Northridge earthquake

Each of these examples describes a rule whereby, given a number (r, t, w, or t), another number (A, P, C, or a) is assigned. In each case we say that the second number is a function of the first number.

> A **function** f is a rule that assigns to each element x in a set D exactly one element, called $f(x)$, in a set E.

We usually consider functions for which the sets D and E are sets of real numbers. The set D is called the **domain** of the function. The number $f(x)$ is the **value of f at x** and is read "f of x." The **range** of f is the set of all possible values of $f(x)$ as x varies throughout the domain. A symbol that represents an arbitrary number in the *domain* of a function f is called an **independent variable**. A symbol that represents a number in the *range* of f is called a **dependent variable**. In Example A, for instance, r is the independent variable and A is the dependent variable.

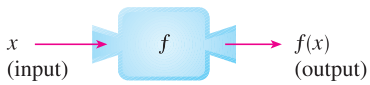


FIGURE 2
Machine diagram for a function f

It's helpful to think of a function as a **machine** (see Figure 2). If x is in the domain of the function f, then when x enters the machine, it's accepted as an input and the machine produces an output $f(x)$ according to the rule of the function. Thus we can think of the domain as the set of all possible inputs and the range as the set of all possible outputs.

The preprogrammed functions in a calculator are good examples of a function as a machine. For example, the square root key on your calculator computes such a function. You press the key labeled $\sqrt{\ }$ (or $\sqrt{x}$) and enter the input x. If $x < 0$, then x is not in the domain of this function; that is, x is not an acceptable input, and the calculator will indicate an error. If $x \geqslant 0$, then an *approximation* to $\sqrt{x}$ will appear in the display. Thus the $\sqrt{x}$ key on your calculator is not quite the same as the exact mathematical function f defined by $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$.

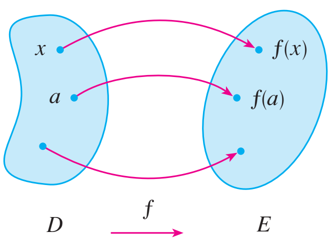


FIGURE 3
Arrow diagram for f

Another way to picture a function is by an **arrow diagram** as in Figure 3. Each arrow connects an element of D to an element of E. The arrow indicates that $f(x)$ is associated with x, $f(a)$ is associated with a, and so on.

The most common method for visualizing a function is its graph. If f is a function with domain D, then its **graph** is the set of ordered pairs

$$\{(x, f(x)) \mid x \in D\}$$

(Notice that these are input-output pairs.) In other words, the graph of f consists of all points (x, y) in the coordinate plane such that $y = f(x)$ and x is in the domain of f.

The graph of a function f gives us a useful picture of the behavior or "life history" of a function. Since the y-coordinate of any point (x, y) on the graph is $y = f(x)$, we can read the value of $f(x)$ from the graph as being the height of the graph above the point x (see Figure 4). The graph of f also allows us to picture the domain of f on the x-axis and its range on the y-axis as in Figure 5.

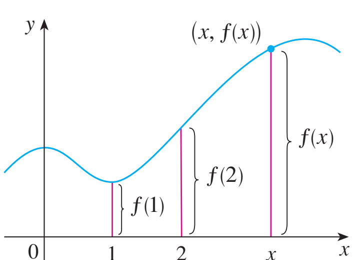


FIGURE 4

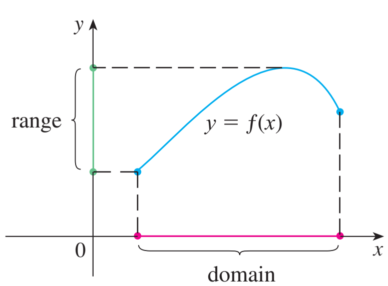


FIGURE 5

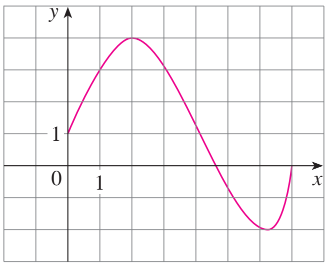


FIGURE 6

EXAMPLE 1 The graph of a function f is shown in Figure 6.
(a) Find the values of $f(1)$ and $f(5)$.
(b) What are the domain and range of f?

SOLUTION
(a) We see from Figure 6 that the point $(1, 3)$ lies on the graph of f, so the value of f at 1 is $f(1) = 3$. (In other words, the point on the graph that lies above $x = 1$ is 3 units above the x-axis.)

When $x = 5$, the graph lies about 0.7 units below the x-axis, so we estimate that $f(5) \approx -0.7$.

(b) We see that $f(x)$ is defined when $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 7$, so the domain of f is the closed interval $[0, 7]$. Notice that f takes on all values from -2 to 4, so the range of f is

The notation for intervals is given in Appendix A.

$$\{y \mid -2 \leqslant y \leqslant 4\} = [-2, 4]$$ ■

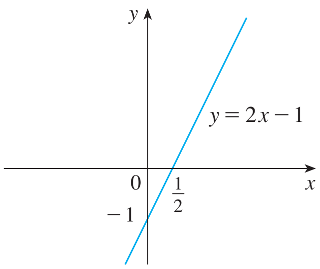


FIGURE 7

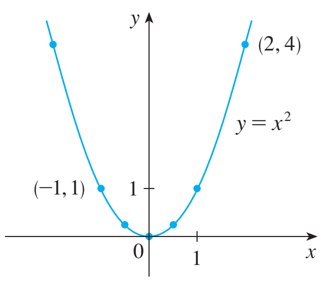


FIGURE 8

EXAMPLE 2 Sketch the graph and find the domain and range of each function.
(a) $f(x) = 2x - 1$ (b) $g(x) = x^2$

SOLUTION
(a) The equation of the graph is $y = 2x - 1$, and we recognize this as being the equation of a line with slope 2 and y-intercept -1. (Recall the slope-intercept form of the equation of a line: $y = mx + b$. See Appendix B.) This enables us to sketch a portion of the graph of f in Figure 7. The expression $2x - 1$ is defined for all real numbers, so the domain of f is the set of all real numbers, which we denote by $\mathbb{R}$. The graph shows that the range is also $\mathbb{R}$.

(b) Since $g(2) = 2^2 = 4$ and $g(-1) = (-1)^2 = 1$, we could plot the points $(2, 4)$ and $(-1, 1)$, together with a few other points on the graph, and join them to produce the graph (Figure 8). The equation of the graph is $y = x^2$, which represents a parabola (see Appendix C). The domain of g is $\mathbb{R}$. The range of g consists of all values of $g(x)$, that is, all numbers of the form x^2. But $x^2 \geqslant 0$ for all numbers x and any positive number y is a square. So the range of g is $\{y \mid y \geqslant 0\} = [0, \infty)$. This can also be seen from Figure 8. ■

EXAMPLE 3 If $f(x) = 2x^2 - 5x + 1$ and $h \neq 0$, evaluate $\dfrac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}$.

SOLUTION We first evaluate $f(a + h)$ by replacing x by $a + h$ in the expression for $f(x)$:

$$\begin{aligned} f(a+h) &= 2(a+h)^2 - 5(a+h) + 1 \\ &= 2(a^2 + 2ah + h^2) - 5(a+h) + 1 \\ &= 2a^2 + 4ah + 2h^2 - 5a - 5h + 1 \end{aligned}$$

Then we substitute into the given expression and simplify:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h} &= \frac{(2a^2 + 4ah + 2h^2 - 5a - 5h + 1) - (2a^2 - 5a + 1)}{h} \\ &= \frac{2a^2 + 4ah + 2h^2 - 5a - 5h + 1 - 2a^2 + 5a - 1}{h} \\ &= \frac{4ah + 2h^2 - 5h}{h} = 4a + 2h - 5 \end{aligned}$$ ■

The expression

$$\frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}$$

in Example 3 is called a **difference quotient** and occurs frequently in calculus. As we will see in Chapter 2, it represents the average rate of change of $f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = a + h$.

Representations of Functions

There are four possible ways to represent a function:

- verbally (by a description in words)
- numerically (by a table of values)
- visually (by a graph)
- algebraically (by an explicit formula)

If a single function can be represented in all four ways, it's often useful to go from one representation to another to gain additional insight into the function. (In Example 2, for instance, we started with algebraic formulas and then obtained the graphs.) But certain functions are described more naturally by one method than by another. With this in mind, let's reexamine the four situations that we considered at the beginning of this section.

A. The most useful representation of the area of a circle as a function of its radius is probably the algebraic formula $A(r) = \pi r^2$, though it is possible to compile a table of values or to sketch a graph (half a parabola). Because a circle has to have a positive radius, the domain is $\{r \mid r > 0\} = (0, \infty)$, and the range is also $(0, \infty)$.

t (years since 1900)	Population (millions)
0	1650
10	1750
20	1860
30	2070
40	2300
50	2560
60	3040
70	3710
80	4450
90	5280
100	6080
110	6870

B. We are given a description of the function in words: $P(t)$ is the human population of the world at time t. Let's measure t so that $t = 0$ corresponds to the year 1900. The table of values of world population provides a convenient representation of this function. If we plot these values, we get the graph (called a *scatter plot)* in Figure 9. It too is a useful representation; the graph allows us to absorb all the data at once. What about a formula? Of course, it's impossible to devise an explicit formula that gives the exact human population $P(t)$ at any time t. But it is possible to find an expression for a function that *approximates* $P(t)$. In fact, using methods explained in Section 1.2, we obtain the approximation

$$P(t) \approx f(t) = (1.43653 \times 10^9) \cdot (1.01395)^t$$

Figure 10 shows that it is a reasonably good "fit." The function f is called a *mathematical model* for population growth. In other words, it is a function with an explicit formula that approximates the behavior of our given function. We will see, however, that the ideas of calculus can be applied to a table of values; an explicit formula is not necessary.

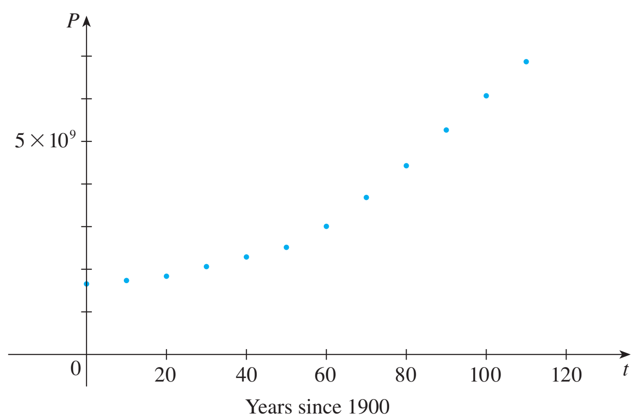


FIGURE 9

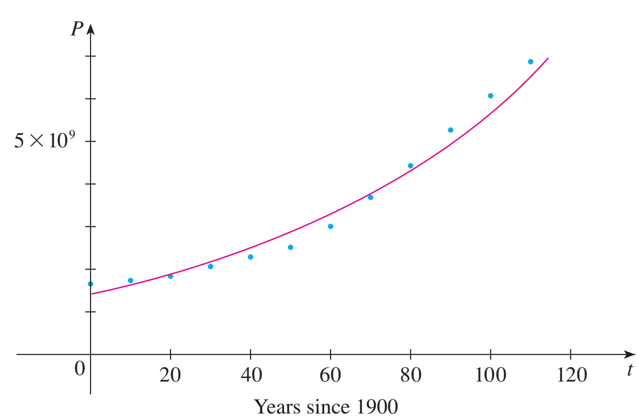


FIGURE 10

The function P is typical of the functions that arise whenever we attempt to apply calculus to the real world. We start with a verbal description of a function. Then we may be able to construct a table of values of the function, perhaps from instrument readings in a scientific experiment. Even though we don't have complete knowledge of the values of the function, we will see throughout the book that it is still possible to perform the operations of calculus on such a function.

A function defined by a table of values is called a *tabular* function.

w (ounces)	$C(w)$ (dollars)
$0 < w \leqslant 1$	0.98
$1 < w \leqslant 2$	1.19
$2 < w \leqslant 3$	1.40
$3 < w \leqslant 4$	1.61
$4 < w \leqslant 5$	1.82
⋮	⋮

C. Again the function is described in words: Let $C(w)$ be the cost of mailing a large envelope with weight w. The rule that the US Postal Service used as of 2015 is as follows: The cost is 98 cents for up to 1 oz, plus 21 cents for each additional ounce (or less) up to 13 oz. The table of values shown in the margin is the most convenient representation for this function, though it is possible to sketch a graph (see Example 10).

D. The graph shown in Figure 1 is the most natural representation of the vertical acceleration function $a(t)$. It's true that a table of values could be compiled, and it is even possible to devise an approximate formula. But everything a geologist needs to know—amplitudes and patterns—can be seen easily from the graph. (The same is true for the patterns seen in electrocardiograms of heart patients and polygraphs for lie-detection.)

In the next example we sketch the graph of a function that is defined verbally.

EXAMPLE 4 When you turn on a hot-water faucet, the temperature T of the water depends on how long the water has been running. Draw a rough graph of T as a function of the time t that has elapsed since the faucet was turned on.

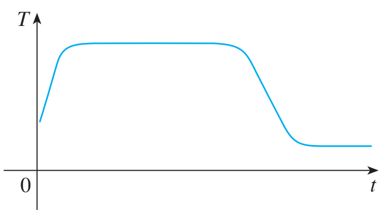


FIGURE 11

SOLUTION The initial temperature of the running water is close to room temperature because the water has been sitting in the pipes. When the water from the hot-water tank starts flowing from the faucet, T increases quickly. In the next phase, T is constant at the temperature of the heated water in the tank. When the tank is drained, T decreases to the temperature of the water supply. This enables us to make the rough sketch of T as a function of t in Figure 11. ■

In the following example we start with a verbal description of a function in a physical situation and obtain an explicit algebraic formula. The ability to do this is a useful skill in solving calculus problems that ask for the maximum or minimum values of quantities.

EXAMPLE 5 A rectangular storage container with an open top has a volume of 10 m^3. The length of its base is twice its width. Material for the base costs \$10 per square meter; material for the sides costs \$6 per square meter. Express the cost of materials as a function of the width of the base.

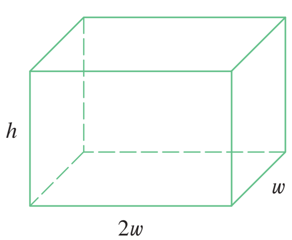


FIGURE 12

SOLUTION We draw a diagram as in Figure 12 and introduce notation by letting w and $2w$ be the width and length of the base, respectively, and h be the height.

The area of the base is $(2w)w = 2w^2$, so the cost, in dollars, of the material for the base is $10(2w^2)$. Two of the sides have area wh and the other two have area $2wh$, so the cost of the material for the sides is $6[2(wh) + 2(2wh)]$. The total cost is therefore

$$C = 10(2w^2) + 6[2(wh) + 2(2wh)] = 20w^2 + 36wh$$

To express C as a function of w alone, we need to eliminate h and we do so by using the fact that the volume is 10 m^3. Thus

$$w(2w)h = 10$$

which gives

$$h = \frac{10}{2w^2} = \frac{5}{w^2}$$

Substituting this into the expression for C, we have

$$C = 20w^2 + 36w\left(\frac{5}{w^2}\right) = 20w^2 + \frac{180}{w}$$

Therefore the equation

$$C(w) = 20w^2 + \frac{180}{w} \qquad w > 0$$

expresses C as a function of w. ■

PS In setting up applied functions as in Example 5, it may be useful to review the principles of problem solving as discussed on page 71, particularly *Step 1: Understand the Problem.*

EXAMPLE 6 Find the domain of each function.

(a) $f(x) = \sqrt{x + 2}$ (b) $g(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^2 - x}$

Domain Convention
If a function is given by a formula and the domain is not stated explicitly, the convention is that the domain is the set of all numbers for which the formula makes sense and defines a real number.

SOLUTION

(a) Because the square root of a negative number is not defined (as a real number), the domain of f consists of all values of x such that $x + 2 \geqslant 0$. This is equivalent to $x \geqslant -2$, so the domain is the interval $[-2, \infty)$.

(b) Since

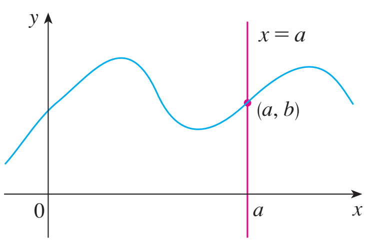
$$g(x) = \frac{1}{x^2 - x} = \frac{1}{x(x-1)}$$

and division by 0 is not allowed, we see that $g(x)$ is not defined when $x = 0$ or $x = 1$. Thus the domain of g is

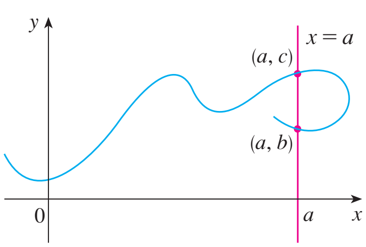
$$\{x \mid x \neq 0, x \neq 1\}$$

which could also be written in interval notation as

$$(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, 1) \cup (1, \infty)$$



(a) This curve represents a function.



(b) This curve doesn't represent a function.

FIGURE 13

The graph of a function is a curve in the xy-plane. But the question arises: Which curves in the xy-plane are graphs of functions? This is answered by the following test.

> **The Vertical Line Test** A curve in the xy-plane is the graph of a function of x if and only if no vertical line intersects the curve more than once.

The reason for the truth of the Vertical Line Test can be seen in Figure 13. If each vertical line $x = a$ intersects a curve only once, at (a, b), then exactly one function value is defined by $f(a) = b$. But if a line $x = a$ intersects the curve twice, at (a, b) and (a, c), then the curve can't represent a function because a function can't assign two different values to a.

For example, the parabola $x = y^2 - 2$ shown in Figure 14(a) is not the graph of a function of x because, as you can see, there are vertical lines that intersect the parabola twice. The parabola, however, does contain the graphs of *two* functions of x. Notice that the equation $x = y^2 - 2$ implies $y^2 = x + 2$, so $y = \pm\sqrt{x+2}$. Thus the upper and lower halves of the parabola are the graphs of the functions $f(x) = \sqrt{x+2}$ [from Example 6(a)] and $g(x) = -\sqrt{x+2}$. [See Figures 14(b) and (c).]

We observe that if we reverse the roles of x and y, then the equation $x = h(y) = y^2 - 2$ *does* define x as a function of y (with y as the independent variable and x as the dependent variable) and the parabola now appears as the graph of the function h.

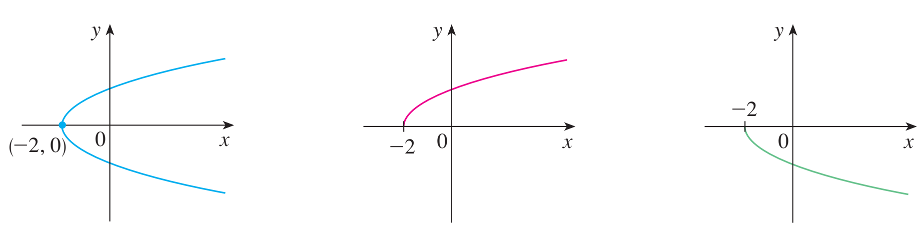


FIGURE 14 (a) $x = y^2 - 2$ (b) $y = \sqrt{x+2}$ (c) $y = -\sqrt{x+2}$

Piecewise Defined Functions

The functions in the following four examples are defined by different formulas in different parts of their domains. Such functions are called **piecewise defined functions**.

EXAMPLE 7 A function f is defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - x & \text{if } x \leqslant -1 \\ x^2 & \text{if } x > -1 \end{cases}$$

Evaluate $f(-2)$, $f(-1)$, and $f(0)$ and sketch the graph.

SOLUTION Remember that a function is a rule. For this particular function the rule is the following: First look at the value of the input x. If it happens that $x \leqslant -1$, then the value of $f(x)$ is $1 - x$. On the other hand, if $x > -1$, then the value of $f(x)$ is x^2.

$$\text{Since } -2 \leqslant -1, \text{ we have } f(-2) = 1 - (-2) = 3.$$

$$\text{Since } -1 \leqslant -1, \text{ we have } f(-1) = 1 - (-1) = 2.$$

$$\text{Since } 0 > -1, \text{ we have } f(0) = 0^2 = 0.$$

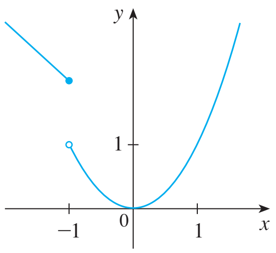


FIGURE 15

How do we draw the graph of f? We observe that if $x \leqslant -1$, then $f(x) = 1 - x$, so the part of the graph of f that lies to the left of the vertical line $x = -1$ must coincide with the line $y = 1 - x$, which has slope -1 and y-intercept 1. If $x > -1$, then $f(x) = x^2$, so the part of the graph of f that lies to the right of the line $x = -1$ must coincide with the graph of $y = x^2$, which is a parabola. This enables us to sketch the graph in Figure 15. The solid dot indicates that the point $(-1, 2)$ is included on the graph; the open dot indicates that the point $(-1, 1)$ is excluded from the graph. ■

The next example of a piecewise defined function is the absolute value function. Recall that the **absolute value** of a number a, denoted by $|a|$, is the distance from a to 0 on the real number line. Distances are always positive or 0, so we have

For a more extensive review of absolute values, see Appendix A.

$$|a| \geqslant 0 \qquad \text{for every number } a$$

For example,

$$|3| = 3 \qquad |-3| = 3 \qquad |0| = 0 \qquad |\sqrt{2} - 1| = \sqrt{2} - 1 \qquad |3 - \pi| = \pi - 3$$

In general, we have

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} |a| &= a \quad && \text{if } a \geqslant 0 \\ |a| &= -a && \text{if } a < 0 \end{aligned}}$$

(Remember that if a is negative, then $-a$ is positive.)

EXAMPLE 8 Sketch the graph of the absolute value function $f(x) = |x|$.

SOLUTION From the preceding discussion we know that

$$|x| = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \geqslant 0 \\ -x & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

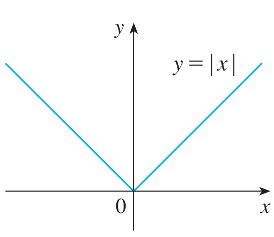


FIGURE 16

Using the same method as in Example 7, we see that the graph of f coincides with the line $y = x$ to the right of the y-axis and coincides with the line $y = -x$ to the left of the y-axis (see Figure 16). ■

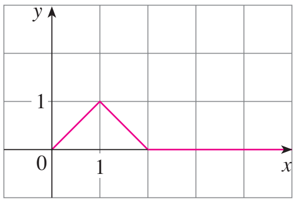


FIGURE 17

Point-slope form of the equation of a line:

$$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$$

See Appendix B.

EXAMPLE 9 Find a formula for the function f graphed in Figure 17.

SOLUTION The line through $(0, 0)$ and $(1, 1)$ has slope $m = 1$ and y-intercept $b = 0$, so its equation is $y = x$. Thus, for the part of the graph of f that joins $(0, 0)$ to $(1, 1)$, we have

$$f(x) = x \qquad \text{if } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 1$$

The line through $(1, 1)$ and $(2, 0)$ has slope $m = -1$, so its point-slope form is

$$y - 0 = (-1)(x - 2) \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = 2 - x$$

So we have $\qquad f(x) = 2 - x \qquad \text{if } 1 < x \leqslant 2$

We also see that the graph of f coincides with the x-axis for $x > 2$. Putting this information together, we have the following three-piece formula for f:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 1 \\ 2 - x & \text{if } 1 < x \leqslant 2 \\ 0 & \text{if } x > 2 \end{cases}$$

■

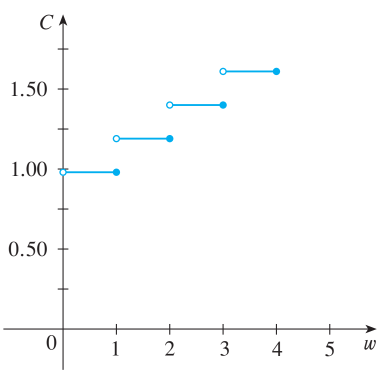


FIGURE 18

EXAMPLE 10 In Example C at the beginning of this section we considered the cost $C(w)$ of mailing a large envelope with weight w. In effect, this is a piecewise defined function because, from the table of values on page 13, we have

$$C(w) = \begin{cases} 0.98 & \text{if } 0 < w \leqslant 1 \\ 1.19 & \text{if } 1 < w \leqslant 2 \\ 1.40 & \text{if } 2 < w \leqslant 3 \\ 1.61 & \text{if } 3 < w \leqslant 4 \\ \vdots & \end{cases}$$

The graph is shown in Figure 18. You can see why functions similar to this one are called **step functions**—they jump from one value to the next. Such functions will be studied in Chapter 2. ■

Symmetry

If a function f satisfies $f(-x) = f(x)$ for every number x in its domain, then f is called an **even function**. For instance, the function $f(x) = x^2$ is even because

$$f(-x) = (-x)^2 = x^2 = f(x)$$

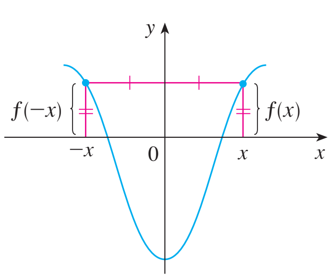


FIGURE 19
An even function

The geometric significance of an even function is that its graph is symmetric with respect to the y-axis (see Figure 19). This means that if we have plotted the graph of f for $x \geqslant 0$, we obtain the entire graph simply by reflecting this portion about the y-axis.

If f satisfies $f(-x) = -f(x)$ for every number x in its domain, then f is called an **odd function**. For example, the function $f(x) = x^3$ is odd because

$$f(-x) = (-x)^3 = -x^3 = -f(x)$$

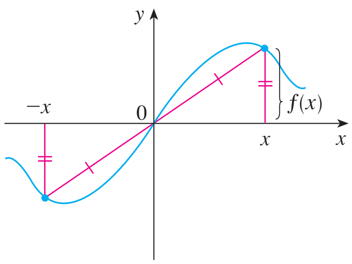


FIGURE 20
An odd function

The graph of an odd function is symmetric about the origin (see Figure 20). If we already have the graph of f for $x \geqslant 0$, we can obtain the entire graph by rotating this portion through 180° about the origin.

EXAMPLE 11 Determine whether each of the following functions is even, odd, or neither even nor odd.

(a) $f(x) = x^5 + x$ (b) $g(x) = 1 - x^4$ (c) $h(x) = 2x - x^2$

SOLUTION

(a)
$$\begin{aligned} f(-x) &= (-x)^5 + (-x) = (-1)^5 x^5 + (-x) \\ &= -x^5 - x = -(x^5 + x) \\ &= -f(x) \end{aligned}$$

Therefore f is an odd function.

(b)
$$g(-x) = 1 - (-x)^4 = 1 - x^4 = g(x)$$

So g is even.

(c)
$$h(-x) = 2(-x) - (-x)^2 = -2x - x^2$$

Since $h(-x) \neq h(x)$ and $h(-x) \neq -h(x)$, we conclude that h is neither even nor odd. ■

The graphs of the functions in Example 11 are shown in Figure 21. Notice that the graph of h is symmetric neither about the y-axis nor about the origin.

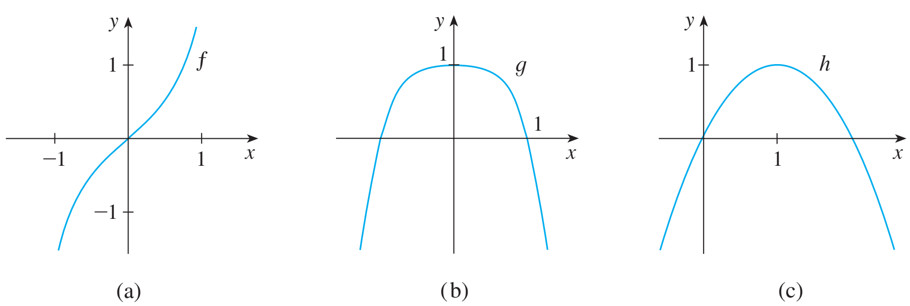


FIGURE 21

■ Increasing and Decreasing Functions

The graph shown in Figure 22 rises from A to B, falls from B to C, and rises again from C to D. The function f is said to be increasing on the interval $[a, b]$, decreasing on $[b, c]$, and increasing again on $[c, d]$. Notice that if x_1 and x_2 are any two numbers between a and b with $x_1 < x_2$, then $f(x_1) < f(x_2)$. We use this as the defining property of an increasing function.

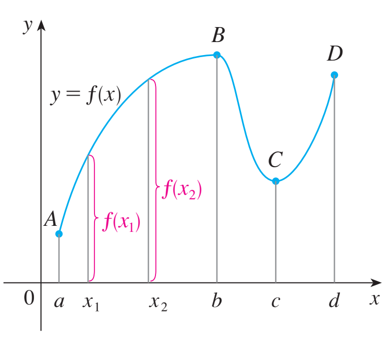


FIGURE 22

A function f is called **increasing** on an interval I if

$$f(x_1) < f(x_2) \qquad \text{whenever } x_1 < x_2 \text{ in } I$$

It is called **decreasing** on I if

$$f(x_1) > f(x_2) \qquad \text{whenever } x_1 < x_2 \text{ in } I$$

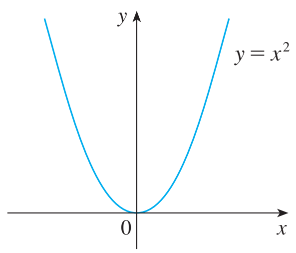


FIGURE 23

In the definition of an increasing function it is important to realize that the inequality $f(x_1) < f(x_2)$ must be satisfied for *every* pair of numbers x_1 and x_2 in I with $x_1 < x_2$.

You can see from Figure 23 that the function $f(x) = x^2$ is decreasing on the interval $(-\infty, 0]$ and increasing on the interval $[0, \infty)$.

1.1 EXERCISES

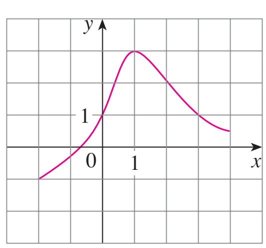
1. If $f(x) = x + \sqrt{2 - x}$ and $g(u) = u + \sqrt{2 - u}$, is it true that $f = g$?

2. If

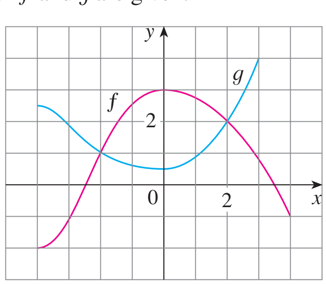
$$f(x) = \frac{x^2 - x}{x - 1} \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(x) = x$$

is it true that $f = g$?

3. The graph of a function f is given.
(a) State the value of $f(1)$.
(b) Estimate the value of $f(-1)$.
(c) For what values of x is $f(x) = 1$?
(d) Estimate the value of x such that $f(x) = 0$.
(e) State the domain and range of f.
(f) On what interval is f increasing?



4. The graphs of f and g are given.



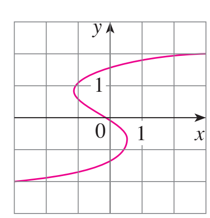
(a) State the values of $f(-4)$ and $g(3)$.
(b) For what values of x is $f(x) = g(x)$?
(c) Estimate the solution of the equation $f(x) = -1$.
(d) On what interval is f decreasing?
(e) State the domain and range of f.
(f) State the domain and range of g.

5. Figure 1 was recorded by an instrument operated by the California Department of Mines and Geology at the University Hospital of the University of Southern California in Los Angeles. Use it to estimate the range of the vertical ground acceleration function at USC during the Northridge earthquake.

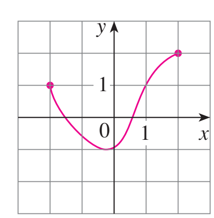
6. In this section we discussed examples of ordinary, everyday functions: Population is a function of time, postage cost is a function of weight, water temperature is a function of time. Give three other examples of functions from everyday life that are described verbally. What can you say about the domain and range of each of your functions? If possible, sketch a rough graph of each function.

7–10 Determine whether the curve is the graph of a function of x. If it is, state the domain and range of the function.

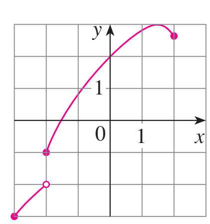
7.



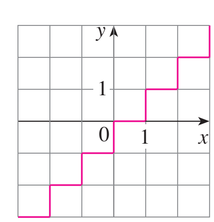
8.



9.

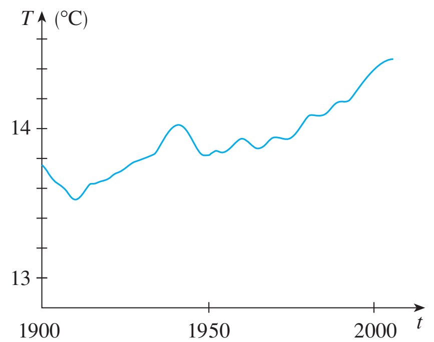


10.



11. Shown is a graph of the global average temperature T during the 20th century. Estimate the following.

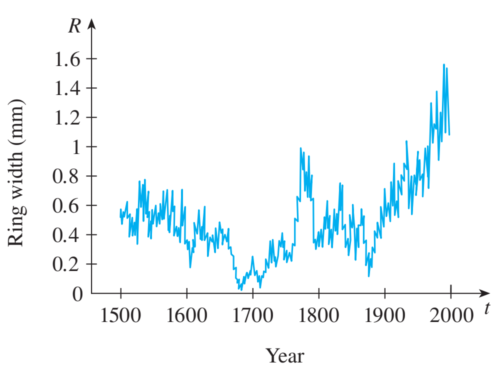
(a) The global average temperature in 1950
(b) The year when the average temperature was 14.2°C
(c) The year when the temperature was smallest? Largest?
(d) The range of T



Source: Adapted from *Globe and Mail* [Toronto], 5 Dec. 2009. Print.

12. Trees grow faster and form wider rings in warm years and grow more slowly and form narrower rings in cooler years. The figure shows ring widths of a Siberian pine from 1500 to 2000.

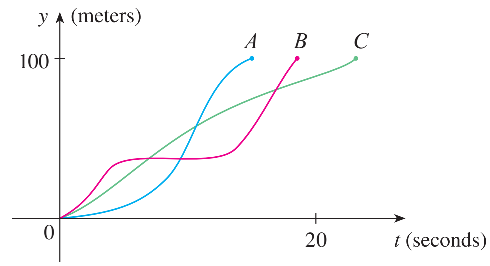
(a) What is the range of the ring width function?
(b) What does the graph tend to say about the temperature of the earth? Does the graph reflect the volcanic eruptions of the mid-19th century?



Source: Adapted from G. Jacoby et al., "Mongolian Tree Rings and 20th-Century Warming," *Science* 273 (1996): 771–73.

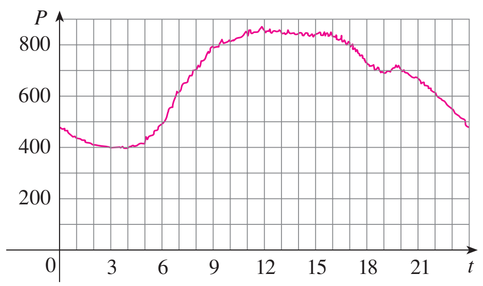
13. You put some ice cubes in a glass, fill the glass with cold water, and then let the glass sit on a table. Describe how the temperature of the water changes as time passes. Then sketch a rough graph of the temperature of the water as a function of the elapsed time.

14. Three runners compete in a 100-meter race. The graph depicts the distance run as a function of time for each runner. Describe in words what the graph tells you about this race. Who won the race? Did each runner finish the race?



15. The graph shows the power consumption for a day in September in San Francisco. (P is measured in megawatts; t is measured in hours starting at midnight.)

(a) What was the power consumption at 6 AM? At 6 PM?
(b) When was the power consumption the lowest? When was it the highest? Do these times seem reasonable?



Pacific Gas & Electric

16. Sketch a rough graph of the number of hours of daylight as a function of the time of year.

17. Sketch a rough graph of the outdoor temperature as a function of time during a typical spring day.

18. Sketch a rough graph of the market value of a new car as a function of time for a period of 20 years. Assume the car is well maintained.

19. Sketch the graph of the amount of a particular brand of coffee sold by a store as a function of the price of the coffee.

20. You place a frozen pie in an oven and bake it for an hour. Then you take it out and let it cool before eating it. Describe how the temperature of the pie changes as time passes. Then sketch a rough graph of the temperature of the pie as a function of time.

21. A homeowner mows the lawn every Wednesday afternoon. Sketch a rough graph of the height of the grass as a function of time over the course of a four-week period.

22. An airplane takes off from an airport and lands an hour later at another airport, 400 miles away. If t represents the time in minutes since the plane has left the terminal building, let $x(t)$ be the horizontal distance traveled and $y(t)$ be the altitude of the plane.

(a) Sketch a possible graph of $x(t)$.
(b) Sketch a possible graph of $y(t)$.

(c) Sketch a possible graph of the ground speed.
(d) Sketch a possible graph of the vertical velocity.

23. Temperature readings T (in °F) were recorded every two hours from midnight to 2:00 PM in Atlanta on June 4, 2013. The time t was measured in hours from midnight.

t	0	2	4	6	8	10	12	14
T	74	69	68	66	70	78	82	86

(a) Use the readings to sketch a rough graph of T as a function of t.
(b) Use your graph to estimate the temperature at 9:00 AM.

24. Researchers measured the blood alcohol concentration (BAC) of eight adult male subjects after rapid consumption of 30 mL of ethanol (corresponding to two standard alcoholic drinks). The table shows the data they obtained by averaging the BAC (in mg/mL) of the eight men.
(a) Use the readings to sketch the graph of the BAC as a function of t.
(b) Use your graph to describe how the effect of alcohol varies with time.

t (hours)	BAC	t (hours)	BAC
0	0	1.75	0.22
0.2	0.25	2.0	0.18
0.5	0.41	2.25	0.15
0.75	0.40	2.5	0.12
1.0	0.33	3.0	0.07
1.25	0.29	3.5	0.03
1.5	0.24	4.0	0.01

Source: Adapted from P. Wilkinson et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Ethanol after Oral Administration in the Fasting State," *Journal of Pharmacokinetics and Biopharmaceutics* 5 (1977): 207–24.

25. If $f(x) = 3x^2 - x + 2$, find $f(2)$, $f(-2)$, $f(a)$, $f(-a)$, $f(a+1)$, $2f(a)$, $f(2a)$, $f(a^2)$, $[f(a)]^2$, and $f(a+h)$.

26. A spherical balloon with radius r inches has volume $V(r) = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$. Find a function that represents the amount of air required to inflate the balloon from a radius of r inches to a radius of $r + 1$ inches.

27–30 Evaluate the difference quotient for the given function. Simplify your answer.

27. $f(x) = 4 + 3x - x^2, \quad \dfrac{f(3+h) - f(3)}{h}$

28. $f(x) = x^3, \quad \dfrac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}$

29. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}, \quad \dfrac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}$

30. $f(x) = \dfrac{x+3}{x+1}, \quad \dfrac{f(x) - f(1)}{x - 1}$

31–37 Find the domain of the function.

31. $f(x) = \dfrac{x+4}{x^2 - 9}$

32. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x^3 - 5}{x^2 + x - 6}$

33. $f(t) = \sqrt[3]{2t - 1}$

34. $g(t) = \sqrt{3 - t} - \sqrt{2 + t}$

35. $h(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt[4]{x^2 - 5x}}$

36. $f(u) = \dfrac{u+1}{1 + \dfrac{1}{u+1}}$

37. $F(p) = \sqrt{2 - \sqrt{p}}$

38. Find the domain and range and sketch the graph of the function $h(x) = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$.

39–40 Find the domain and sketch the graph of the function.

39. $f(x) = 1.6x - 2.4$

40. $g(t) = \dfrac{t^2 - 1}{t + 1}$

41–44 Evaluate $f(-3)$, $f(0)$, and $f(2)$ for the piecewise defined function. Then sketch the graph of the function.

41. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 2 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 1 - x & \text{if } x \geqslant 0 \end{cases}$

42. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 3 - \frac{1}{2}x & \text{if } x < 2 \\ 2x - 5 & \text{if } x \geqslant 2 \end{cases}$

43. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 1 & \text{if } x \leqslant -1 \\ x^2 & \text{if } x > -1 \end{cases}$

44. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{if } x \leqslant 1 \\ 7 - 2x & \text{if } x > 1 \end{cases}$

45–50 Sketch the graph of the function.

45. $f(x) = x + |x|$

46. $f(x) = |x + 2|$

47. $g(t) = |1 - 3t|$

48. $h(t) = |t| + |t + 1|$

49. $f(x) = \begin{cases} |x| & \text{if } |x| \leqslant 1 \\ 1 & \text{if } |x| > 1 \end{cases}$

50. $g(x) = ||x| - 1|$

51–56 Find an expression for the function whose graph is the given curve.

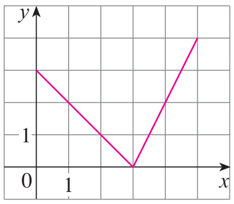
51. The line segment joining the points $(1, -3)$ and $(5, 7)$

52. The line segment joining the points $(-5, 10)$ and $(7, -10)$

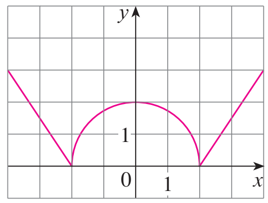
53. The bottom half of the parabola $x + (y - 1)^2 = 0$

54. The top half of the circle $x^2 + (y - 2)^2 = 4$

55.



56.



57–61 Find a formula for the described function and state its domain.

57. A rectangle has perimeter 20 m. Express the area of the rectangle as a function of the length of one of its sides.

58. A rectangle has area 16 m^2. Express the perimeter of the rectangle as a function of the length of one of its sides.

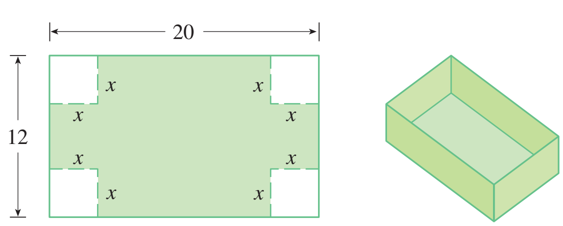
59. Express the area of an equilateral triangle as a function of the length of a side.

60. A closed rectangular box with volume 8 ft^3 has length twice the width. Express the height of the box as a function of the width.

61. An open rectangular box with volume 2 m^3 has a square base. Express the surface area of the box as a function of the length of a side of the base.

62. A Norman window has the shape of a rectangle surmounted by a semicircle. If the perimeter of the window is 30 ft, express the area A of the window as a function of the width x of the window.

63. A box with an open top is to be constructed from a rectangular piece of cardboard with dimensions 12 in. by 20 in. by cutting out equal squares of side x at each corner and then folding up the sides as in the figure. Express the volume V of the box as a function of x.



64. A cell phone plan has a basic charge of \$35 a month. The plan includes 400 free minutes and charges 10 cents for each additional minute of usage. Write the monthly cost C as a function of the number x of minutes used and graph C as a function of x for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 600$.

65. In a certain state the maximum speed permitted on freeways is 65 mi/h and the minimum speed is 40 mi/h. The fine for violating these limits is \$15 for every mile per hour above the maximum speed or below the minimum speed. Express the amount of the fine F as a function of the driving speed x and graph $F(x)$ for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 100$.

66. An electricity company charges its customers a base rate of \$10 a month, plus 6 cents per kilowatt-hour (kWh) for the first 1200 kWh and 7 cents per kWh for all usage over 1200 kWh. Express the monthly cost E as a function of the amount x of electricity used. Then graph the function E for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2000$.

67. In a certain country, income tax is assessed as follows. There is no tax on income up to \$10,000. Any income over \$10,000 is taxed at a rate of 10%, up to an income of \$20,000. Any income over \$20,000 is taxed at 15%.

(a) Sketch the graph of the tax rate R as a function of the income I.

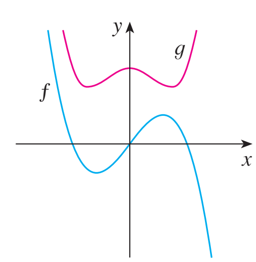
(b) How much tax is assessed on an income of \$14,000? On \$26,000?

(c) Sketch the graph of the total assessed tax T as a function of the income I.

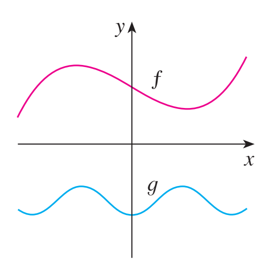
68. The functions in Example 10 and Exercise 67 are called *step functions* because their graphs look like stairs. Give two other examples of step functions that arise in everyday life.

69–70 Graphs of f and g are shown. Decide whether each function is even, odd, or neither. Explain your reasoning.

69.



70.



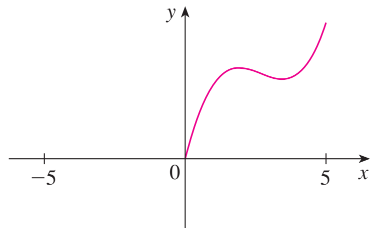
71. (a) If the point (5, 3) is on the graph of an even function, what other point must also be on the graph?

(b) If the point (5, 3) is on the graph of an odd function, what other point must also be on the graph?

72. A function f has domain $[-5, 5]$ and a portion of its graph is shown.

(a) Complete the graph of f if it is known that f is even.

(b) Complete the graph of f if it is known that f is odd.



73–78 Determine whether f is even, odd, or neither. If you have a graphing calculator, use it to check your answer visually.

73. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 + 1}$

74. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x^4 + 1}$

75. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x + 1}$

76. $f(x) = x|x|$

77. $f(x) = 1 + 3x^2 - x^4$

78. $f(x) = 1 + 3x^3 - x^5$

79. If f and g are both even functions, is $f + g$ even? If f and g are both odd functions, is $f + g$ odd? What if f is even and g is odd? Justify your answers.

80. If f and g are both even functions, is the product fg even? If f and g are both odd functions, is fg odd? What if f is even and g is odd? Justify your answers.

1.2 Mathematical Models: A Catalog of Essential Functions

A **mathematical model** is a mathematical description (often by means of a function or an equation) of a real-world phenomenon such as the size of a population, the demand for a product, the speed of a falling object, the concentration of a product in a chemical reaction, the life expectancy of a person at birth, or the cost of emission reductions. The purpose of the model is to understand the phenomenon and perhaps to make predictions about future behavior.

Figure 1 illustrates the process of mathematical modeling. Given a real-world problem, our first task is to formulate a mathematical model by identifying and naming the independent and dependent variables and making assumptions that simplify the phenomenon enough to make it mathematically tractable. We use our knowledge of the physical situation and our mathematical skills to obtain equations that relate the variables. In situations where there is no physical law to guide us, we may need to collect data (either from a library or the Internet or by conducting our own experiments) and examine the data in the form of a table in order to discern patterns. From this numerical representation of a function we may wish to obtain a graphical representation by plotting the data. The graph might even suggest a suitable algebraic formula in some cases.

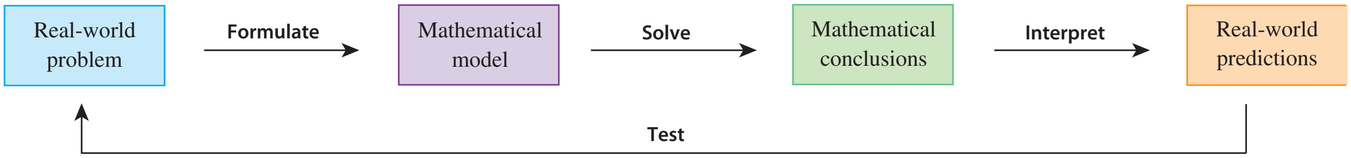


FIGURE 1
The modeling process

The second stage is to apply the mathematics that we know (such as the calculus that will be developed throughout this book) to the mathematical model that we have formulated in order to derive mathematical conclusions. Then, in the third stage, we take those mathematical conclusions and interpret them as information about the original real-world phenomenon by way of offering explanations or making predictions. The final step is to test our predictions by checking against new real data. If the predictions don't compare well with reality, we need to refine our model or to formulate a new model and start the cycle again.

A mathematical model is never a completely accurate representation of a physical situation—it is an *idealization*. A good model simplifies reality enough to permit mathematical calculations but is accurate enough to provide valuable conclusions. It is important to realize the limitations of the model. In the end, Mother Nature has the final say.

There are many different types of functions that can be used to model relationships observed in the real world. In what follows, we discuss the behavior and graphs of these functions and give examples of situations appropriately modeled by such functions.

Linear Models

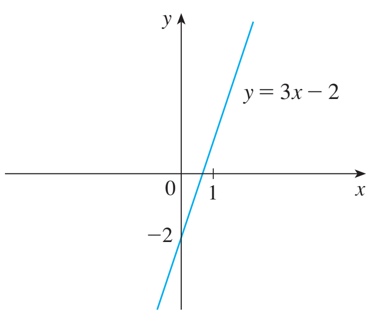
The coordinate geometry of lines is reviewed in Appendix B.

When we say that y is a **linear function** of x, we mean that the graph of the function is a line, so we can use the slope-intercept form of the equation of a line to write a formula for the function as

$$y = f(x) = mx + b$$

where m is the slope of the line and b is the y-intercept.

A characteristic feature of linear functions is that they grow at a constant rate. For instance, Figure 2 shows a graph of the linear function $f(x) = 3x - 2$ and a table of sample values. Notice that whenever x increases by 0.1, the value of $f(x)$ increases by 0.3. So $f(x)$ increases three times as fast as x. Thus the slope of the graph $y = 3x - 2$, namely 3, can be interpreted as the rate of change of y with respect to x.



x	$f(x) = 3x - 2$
1.0	1.0
1.1	1.3
1.2	1.6
1.3	1.9
1.4	2.2
1.5	2.5

FIGURE 2

EXAMPLE 1

(a) As dry air moves upward, it expands and cools. If the ground temperature is 20°C and the temperature at a height of 1 km is 10°C, express the temperature T (in °C) as a function of the height h (in kilometers), assuming that a linear model is appropriate.
(b) Draw the graph of the function in part (a). What does the slope represent?
(c) What is the temperature at a height of 2.5 km?

SOLUTION

(a) Because we are assuming that T is a linear function of h, we can write

$$T = mh + b$$

We are given that $T = 20$ when $h = 0$, so

$$20 = m \cdot 0 + b = b$$

In other words, the y-intercept is $b = 20$.

We are also given that $T = 10$ when $h = 1$, so

$$10 = m \cdot 1 + 20$$

The slope of the line is therefore $m = 10 - 20 = -10$ and the required linear function is

$$T = -10h + 20$$

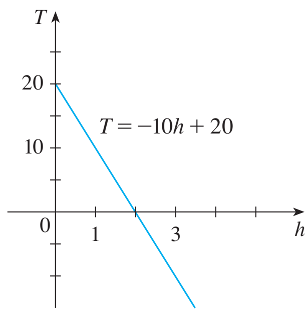


FIGURE 3

(b) The graph is sketched in Figure 3. The slope is $m = -10°\text{C/km}$, and this represents the rate of change of temperature with respect to height.

(c) At a height of $h = 2.5$ km, the temperature is

$$T = -10(2.5) + 20 = -5°\text{C}$$ ■

If there is no physical law or principle to help us formulate a model, we construct an **empirical model**, which is based entirely on collected data. We seek a curve that "fits" the data in the sense that it captures the basic trend of the data points.

EXAMPLE 2 Table 1 lists the average carbon dioxide level in the atmosphere, measured in parts per million at Mauna Loa Observatory from 1980 to 2012. Use the data in Table 1 to find a model for the carbon dioxide level.

SOLUTION We use the data in Table 1 to make the scatter plot in Figure 4, where t represents time (in years) and C represents the CO_2 level (in parts per million, ppm).

Table 1

Year	CO_2 level (in ppm)	Year	CO_2 level (in ppm)
1980	338.7	1998	366.5
1982	341.2	2000	369.4
1984	344.4	2002	373.2
1986	347.2	2004	377.5
1988	351.5	2006	381.9
1990	354.2	2008	385.6
1992	356.3	2010	389.9
1994	358.6	2012	393.8
1996	362.4		

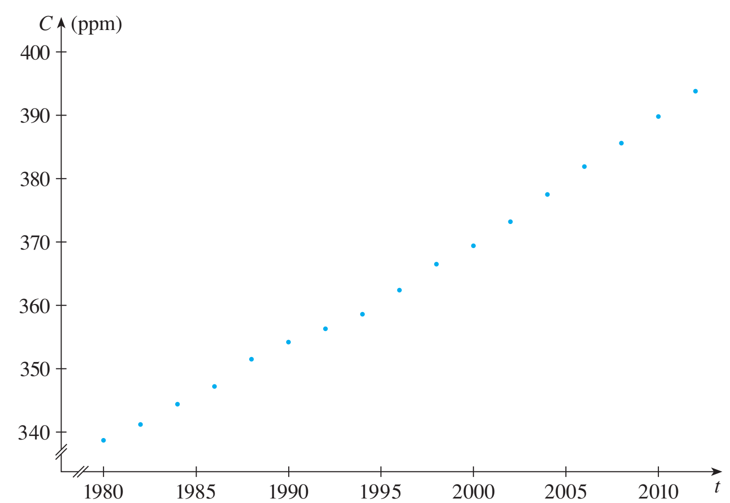


FIGURE 4 Scatter plot for the average CO_2 level

Notice that the data points appear to lie close to a straight line, so it's natural to choose a linear model in this case. But there are many possible lines that approximate these data points, so which one should we use? One possibility is the line that passes through the first and last data points. The slope of this line is

$$\frac{393.8 - 338.7}{2012 - 1980} = \frac{55.1}{32} = 1.721875 \approx 1.722$$

We write its equation as

$$C - 338.7 = 1.722(t - 1980)$$

or

$$\boxed{1} \qquad C = 1.722t - 3070.86$$

Equation 1 gives one possible linear model for the carbon dioxide level; it is graphed in Figure 5.

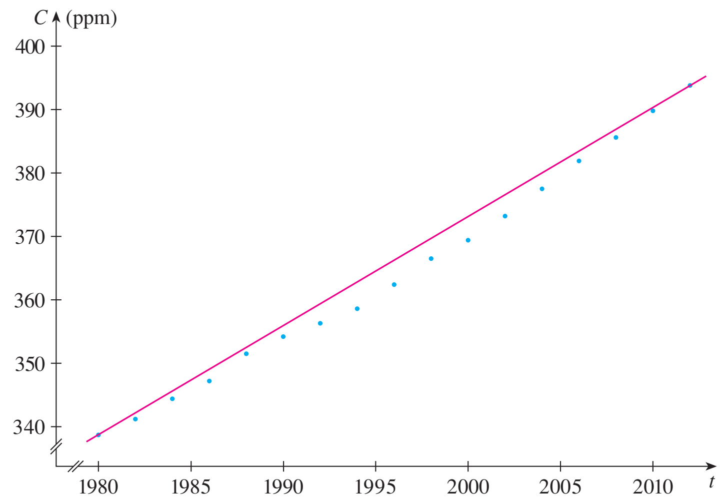


FIGURE 5
Linear model through first and last data points

A computer or graphing calculator finds the regression line by the method of **least squares**, which is to minimize the sum of the squares of the vertical distances between the data points and the line. The details are explained in Section 14.7.

Notice that our model gives values higher than most of the actual CO_2 levels. A better linear model is obtained by a procedure from statistics called *linear regression*. If we use a graphing calculator, we enter the data from Table 1 into the data editor and choose the linear regression command. (With Maple we use the fit[leastsquare] command in the stats package; with Mathematica we use the Fit command.) The machine gives the slope and y-intercept of the regression line as

$$m = 1.71262 \qquad b = -3054.14$$

So our least squares model for the CO_2 level is

$$\boxed{2} \qquad C = 1.71262t - 3054.14$$

In Figure 6 we graph the regression line as well as the data points. Comparing with Figure 5, we see that it gives a better fit than our previous linear model.

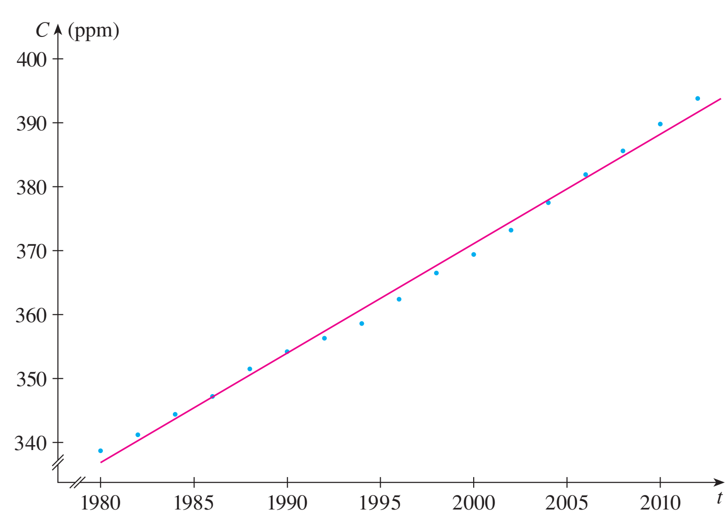


FIGURE 6
The regression line

EXAMPLE 3 Use the linear model given by Equation 2 to estimate the average CO_2 level for 1987 and to predict the level for the year 2020. According to this model, when will the CO_2 level exceed 420 parts per million?

SOLUTION Using Equation 2 with $t = 1987$, we estimate that the average CO_2 level in 1987 was

$$C(1987) = (1.71262)(1987) - 3054.14 \approx 348.84$$

This is an example of *interpolation* because we have estimated a value *between* observed values. (In fact, the Mauna Loa Observatory reported that the average CO_2 level in 1987 was 348.93 ppm, so our estimate is quite accurate.)

With $t = 2020$, we get

$$C(2020) = (1.71262)(2020) - 3054.14 \approx 405.35$$

So we predict that the average CO_2 level in the year 2020 will be 405.4 ppm. This is an example of *extrapolation* because we have predicted a value *outside* the time frame of observations. Consequently, we are far less certain about the accuracy of our prediction.

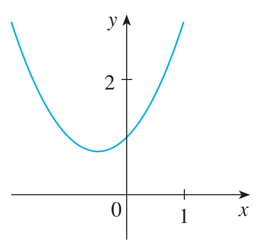
Using Equation 2, we see that the CO_2 level exceeds 420 ppm when

$$1.71262t - 3054.14 > 420$$

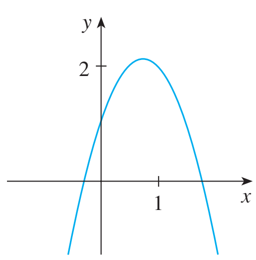
Solving this inequality, we get

$$t > \frac{3474.14}{1.71262} \approx 2028.55$$

We therefore predict that the CO_2 level will exceed 420 ppm by the year 2029. This prediction is risky because it involves a time quite remote from our observations. In fact, we see from Figure 6 that the trend has been for CO_2 levels to increase rather more rapidly in recent years, so the level might exceed 420 ppm well before 2029. ■



(a) $y = x^2 + x + 1$



(b) $y = -2x^2 + 3x + 1$

FIGURE 7
The graphs of quadratic functions are parabolas.

Polynomials

A function P is called a **polynomial** if

$$P(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_2 x^2 + a_1 x + a_0$$

where n is a nonnegative integer and the numbers $a_0, a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ are constants called the **coefficients** of the polynomial. The domain of any polynomial is $\mathbb{R} = (-\infty, \infty)$. If the leading coefficient $a_n \neq 0$, then the **degree** of the polynomial is n. For example, the function

$$P(x) = 2x^6 - x^4 + \tfrac{2}{5}x^3 + \sqrt{2}$$

is a polynomial of degree 6.

A polynomial of degree 1 is of the form $P(x) = mx + b$ and so it is a linear function. A polynomial of degree 2 is of the form $P(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ and is called a **quadratic function**. Its graph is always a parabola obtained by shifting the parabola $y = ax^2$, as we will see in the next section. The parabola opens upward if $a > 0$ and downward if $a < 0$. (See Figure 7.)

A polynomial of degree 3 is of the form

$$P(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \qquad a \neq 0$$

and is called a **cubic function**. Figure 8 shows the graph of a cubic function in part (a) and graphs of polynomials of degrees 4 and 5 in parts (b) and (c). We will see later why the graphs have these shapes.

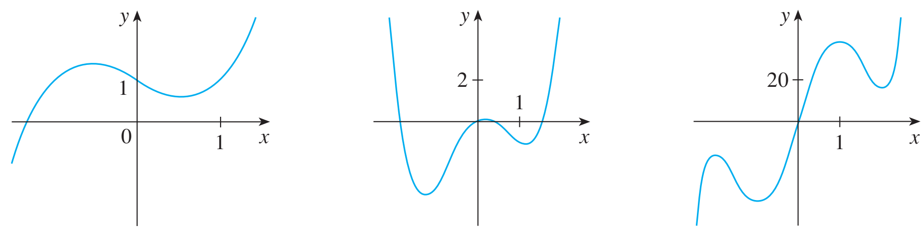


FIGURE 8

(a) $y = x^3 - x + 1$ (b) $y = x^4 - 3x^2 + x$ (c) $y = 3x^5 - 25x^3 + 60x$

Polynomials are commonly used to model various quantities that occur in the natural and social sciences. For instance, in Section 3.7 we will explain why economists often use a polynomial $P(x)$ to represent the cost of producing x units of a commodity. In the following example we use a quadratic function to model the fall of a ball.

Table 2

Time (seconds)	Height (meters)
0	450
1	445
2	431
3	408
4	375
5	332
6	279
7	216
8	143
9	61

EXAMPLE 4 A ball is dropped from the upper observation deck of the CN Tower, 450 m above the ground, and its height h above the ground is recorded at 1-second intervals in Table 2. Find a model to fit the data and use the model to predict the time at which the ball hits the ground.

SOLUTION We draw a scatter plot of the data in Figure 9 and observe that a linear model is inappropriate. But it looks as if the data points might lie on a parabola, so we try a quadratic model instead. Using a graphing calculator or computer algebra system (which uses the least squares method), we obtain the following quadratic model:

$$\boxed{3} \qquad h = 449.36 + 0.96t - 4.90t^2$$

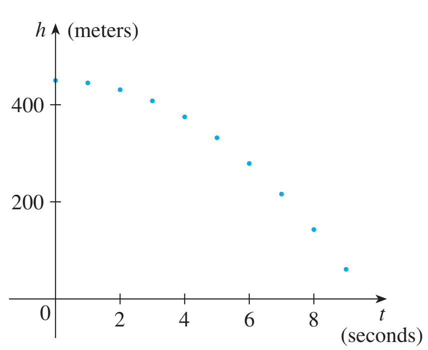


FIGURE 9
Scatter plot for a falling ball

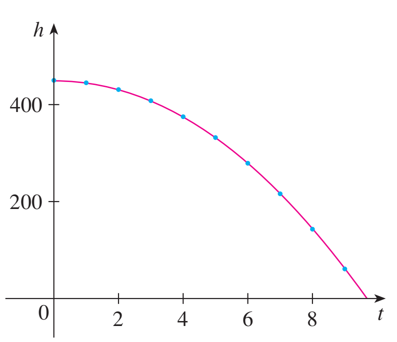


FIGURE 10
Quadratic model for a falling ball

In Figure 10 we plot the graph of Equation 3 together with the data points and see that the quadratic model gives a very good fit.

The ball hits the ground when $h = 0$, so we solve the quadratic equation

$$-4.90t^2 + 0.96t + 449.36 = 0$$

The quadratic formula gives

$$t = \frac{-0.96 \pm \sqrt{(0.96)^2 - 4(-4.90)(449.36)}}{2(-4.90)}$$

The positive root is $t \approx 9.67$, so we predict that the ball will hit the ground after about 9.7 seconds. ■

Power Functions

A function of the form $f(x) = x^a$, where a is a constant, is called a **power function**. We consider several cases.

(i) $a = n$, where n is a positive integer

The graphs of $f(x) = x^n$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, 4$, and 5 are shown in Figure 11. (These are polynomials with only one term.) We already know the shape of the graphs of $y = x$ (a line through the origin with slope 1) and $y = x^2$ [a parabola, see Example 1.1.2(b)].

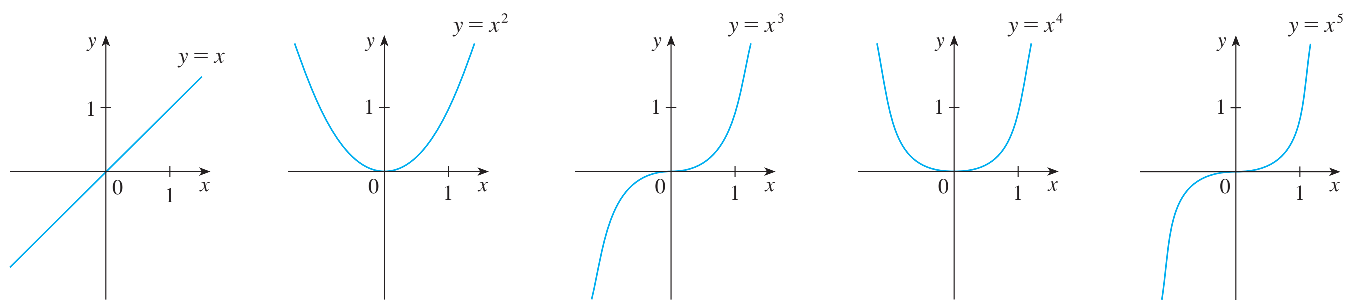


FIGURE 11 Graphs of $f(x) = x^n$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5$

The general shape of the graph of $f(x) = x^n$ depends on whether n is even or odd. If n is even, then $f(x) = x^n$ is an even function and its graph is similar to the parabola $y = x^2$. If n is odd, then $f(x) = x^n$ is an odd function and its graph is similar to that of $y = x^3$. Notice from Figure 12, however, that as n increases, the graph of $y = x^n$ becomes flatter near 0 and steeper when $|x| \geqslant 1$. (If x is small, then x^2 is smaller, x^3 is even smaller, x^4 is smaller still, and so on.)

A **family of functions** is a collection of functions whose equations are related. Figure 12 shows two families of power functions, one with even powers and one with odd powers.

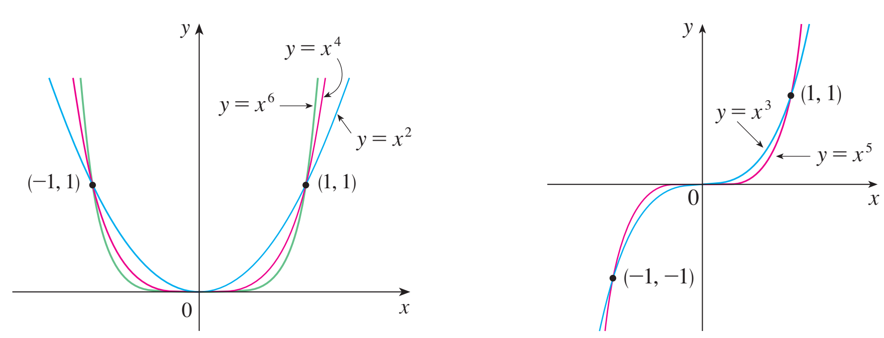


FIGURE 12

(ii) $a = 1/n$, where n is a positive integer

The function $f(x) = x^{1/n} = \sqrt[n]{x}$ is a **root function**. For $n = 2$ it is the square root function $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$, whose domain is $[0, \infty)$ and whose graph is the upper half of the parabola $x = y^2$. [See Figure 13(a).] For other even values of n, the graph of $y = \sqrt[n]{x}$ is similar to that of $y = \sqrt{x}$. For $n = 3$ we have the cube root function $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{x}$ whose domain is $\mathbb{R}$ (recall that every real number has a cube root) and whose graph is shown in Figure 13(b). The graph of $y = \sqrt[n]{x}$ for n odd ($n > 3$) is similar to that of $y = \sqrt[3]{x}$.

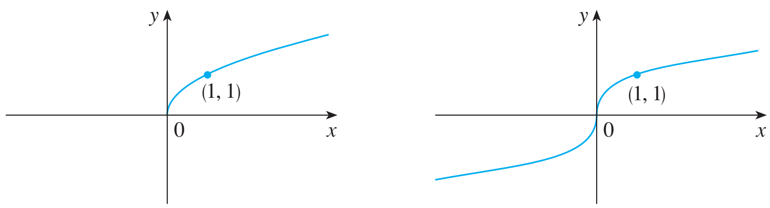


FIGURE 13
Graphs of root functions

(a) $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ (b) $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{x}$

(iii) $a = -1$
The graph of the **reciprocal function** $f(x) = x^{-1} = 1/x$ is shown in Figure 14. Its graph has the equation $y = 1/x$, or $xy = 1$, and is a hyperbola with the coordinate axes as its asymptotes. This function arises in physics and chemistry in connection with Boyle's Law, which says that, when the temperature is constant, the volume V of a gas is inversely proportional to the pressure P:

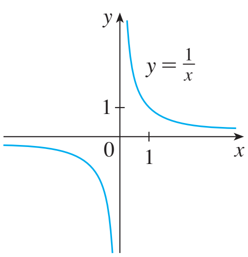


FIGURE 14
The reciprocal function

$$V = \frac{C}{P}$$

where C is a constant. Thus the graph of V as a function of P (see Figure 15) has the same general shape as the right half of Figure 14.

Power functions are also used to model species-area relationships (Exercises 30–31), illumination as a function of distance from a light source (Exercise 29), and the period of revolution of a planet as a function of its distance from the sun (Exercise 32).

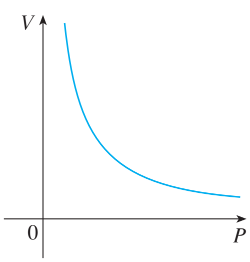


FIGURE 15
Volume as a function of pressure at constant temperature

Rational Functions

A **rational function** f is a ratio of two polynomials:

$$f(x) = \frac{P(x)}{Q(x)}$$

where P and Q are polynomials. The domain consists of all values of x such that $Q(x) \neq 0$. A simple example of a rational function is the function $f(x) = 1/x$, whose domain is $\{x \mid x \neq 0\}$; this is the reciprocal function graphed in Figure 14. The function

$$f(x) = \frac{2x^4 - x^2 + 1}{x^2 - 4}$$

is a rational function with domain $\{x \mid x \neq \pm 2\}$. Its graph is shown in Figure 16.

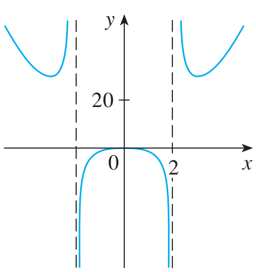


FIGURE 16
$f(x) = \dfrac{2x^4 - x^2 + 1}{x^2 - 4}$

Algebraic Functions

A function f is called an **algebraic function** if it can be constructed using algebraic operations (such as addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, and taking roots) starting with polynomials. Any rational function is automatically an algebraic function. Here are two more examples:

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 + 1} \qquad g(x) = \frac{x^4 - 16x^2}{x + \sqrt{x}} + (x - 2)\sqrt[3]{x + 1}$$

When we sketch algebraic functions in Chapter 4, we will see that their graphs can assume a variety of shapes. Figure 17 illustrates some of the possibilities.

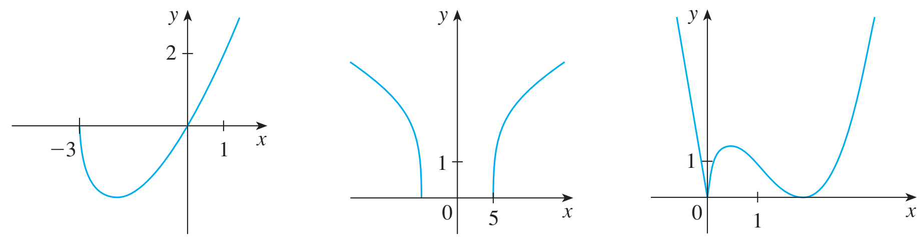


FIGURE 17 (a) $f(x) = x\sqrt{x+3}$ (b) $g(x) = \sqrt[4]{x^2 - 25}$ (c) $h(x) = x^{2/3}(x-2)^2$

An example of an algebraic function occurs in the theory of relativity. The mass of a particle with velocity v is

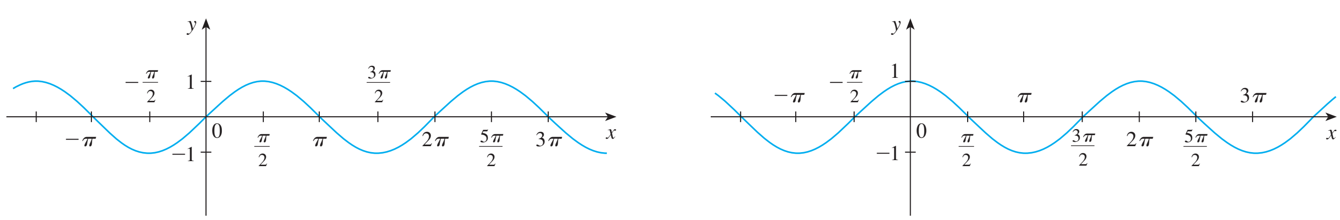
$$m = f(v) = \frac{m_0}{\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}}$$

where m_0 is the rest mass of the particle and $c = 3.0 \times 10^5$ km/s is the speed of light in a vacuum.

Trigonometric Functions

The Reference Pages are located at the back of the book.

Trigonometry and the trigonometric functions are reviewed on Reference Page 2 and also in Appendix D. In calculus the convention is that radian measure is always used (except when otherwise indicated). For example, when we use the function $f(x) = \sin x$, it is understood that $\sin x$ means the sine of the angle whose radian measure is x. Thus the graphs of the sine and cosine functions are as shown in Figure 18.



(a) $f(x) = \sin x$ (b) $g(x) = \cos x$

FIGURE 18

Notice that for both the sine and cosine functions the domain is $(-\infty, \infty)$ and the range is the closed interval $[-1, 1]$. Thus, for all values of x, we have

$$\boxed{-1 \leqslant \sin x \leqslant 1 \qquad -1 \leqslant \cos x \leqslant 1}$$

or, in terms of absolute values,

$$|\sin x| \leqslant 1 \qquad |\cos x| \leqslant 1$$

Also, the zeros of the sine function occur at the integer multiples of π; that is,

$$\sin x = 0 \quad \text{when} \quad x = n\pi \quad n \text{ an integer}$$

An important property of the sine and cosine functions is that they are periodic functions and have period 2π. This means that, for all values of x,

$$\boxed{\sin(x + 2\pi) = \sin x \qquad \cos(x + 2\pi) = \cos x}$$

The periodic nature of these functions makes them suitable for modeling repetitive phenomena such as tides, vibrating springs, and sound waves. For instance, in Example 1.3.4 we will see that a reasonable model for the number of hours of daylight in Philadelphia t days after January 1 is given by the function

$$L(t) = 12 + 2.8 \sin\left[\frac{2\pi}{365}(t - 80)\right]$$

EXAMPLE 5 What is the domain of the function $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{1 - 2\cos x}$?

SOLUTION This function is defined for all values of x except for those that make the denominator 0. But

$$1 - 2\cos x = 0 \iff \cos x = \frac{1}{2} \iff x = \frac{\pi}{3} + 2n\pi \quad \text{or} \quad x = \frac{5\pi}{3} + 2n\pi$$

where n is any integer (because the cosine function has period 2π). So the domain of f is the set of all real numbers except for the ones noted above. ■

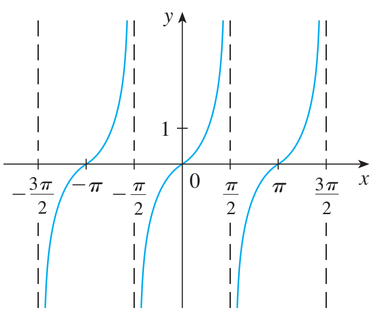


FIGURE 19
$y = \tan x$

The tangent function is related to the sine and cosine functions by the equation

$$\tan x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x}$$

and its graph is shown in Figure 19. It is undefined whenever $\cos x = 0$, that is, when $x = \pm\pi/2, \pm 3\pi/2, \ldots$. Its range is $(-\infty, \infty)$. Notice that the tangent function has period π:

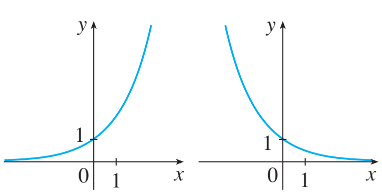
$$\tan(x + \pi) = \tan x \qquad \text{for all } x$$

The remaining three trigonometric functions (cosecant, secant, and cotangent) are the reciprocals of the sine, cosine, and tangent functions. Their graphs are shown in Appendix D.

Exponential Functions

The **exponential functions** are the functions of the form $f(x) = b^x$, where the base b is a positive constant. The graphs of $y = 2^x$ and $y = (0.5)^x$ are shown in Figure 20. In both cases the domain is $(-\infty, \infty)$ and the range is $(0, \infty)$.

Exponential functions will be studied in detail in Section 1.4, and we will see that they are useful for modeling many natural phenomena, such as population growth (if $b > 1$) and radioactive decay (if $b < 1$).



(a) $y = 2^x$ (b) $y = (0.5)^x$

FIGURE 20

Logarithmic Functions

The **logarithmic functions** $f(x) = \log_b x$, where the base b is a positive constant, are the inverse functions of the exponential functions. They will be studied in Section 1.5. Figure

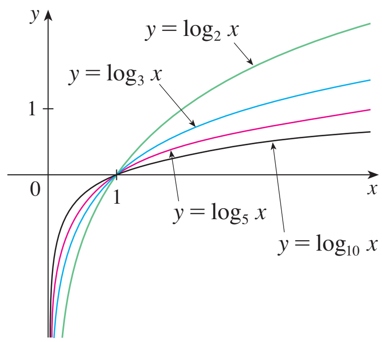


FIGURE 21

21 shows the graphs of four logarithmic functions with various bases. In each case the domain is $(0, \infty)$, the range is $(-\infty, \infty)$, and the function increases slowly when $x > 1$.

EXAMPLE 6 Classify the following functions as one of the types of functions that we have discussed.

(a) $f(x) = 5^x$ (b) $g(x) = x^5$

(c) $h(x) = \dfrac{1 + x}{1 - \sqrt{x}}$ (d) $u(t) = 1 - t + 5t^4$

SOLUTION

(a) $f(x) = 5^x$ is an exponential function. (The x is the exponent.)

(b) $g(x) = x^5$ is a power function. (The x is the base.) We could also consider it to be a polynomial of degree 5.

(c) $h(x) = \dfrac{1 + x}{1 - \sqrt{x}}$ is an algebraic function.

(d) $u(t) = 1 - t + 5t^4$ is a polynomial of degree 4. ■

1.2 EXERCISES

1–2 Classify each function as a power function, root function, polynomial (state its degree), rational function, algebraic function, trigonometric function, exponential function, or logarithmic function.

1. (a) $f(x) = \log_2 x$ (b) $g(x) = \sqrt[4]{x}$

(c) $h(x) = \dfrac{2x^3}{1 - x^2}$ (d) $u(t) = 1 - 1.1t + 2.54t^2$

(e) $v(t) = 5^t$ (f) $w(\theta) = \sin\theta \cos^2\theta$

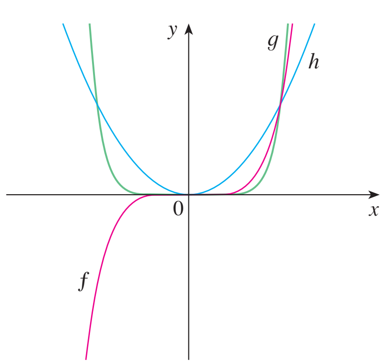
2. (a) $y = \pi^x$ (b) $y = x^\pi$

(c) $y = x^2(2 - x^3)$ (d) $y = \tan t - \cos t$

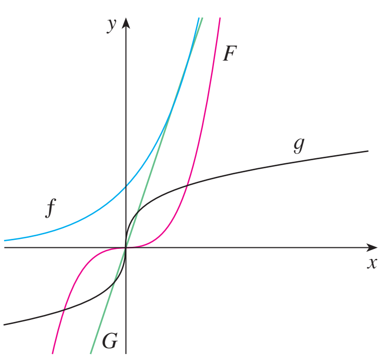
(e) $y = \dfrac{s}{1 + s}$ (f) $y = \dfrac{\sqrt{x^3 - 1}}{1 + \sqrt[3]{x}}$

3–4 Match each equation with its graph. Explain your choices. (Don't use a computer or graphing calculator.)

3. (a) $y = x^2$ (b) $y = x^5$ (c) $y = x^8$



4. (a) $y = 3x$ (b) $y = 3^x$ (c) $y = x^3$ (d) $y = \sqrt[3]{x}$



5–6 Find the domain of the function.

5. $f(x) = \dfrac{\cos x}{1 - \sin x}$ **6.** $g(x) = \dfrac{1}{1 - \tan x}$

7. (a) Find an equation for the family of linear functions with slope 2 and sketch several members of the family.

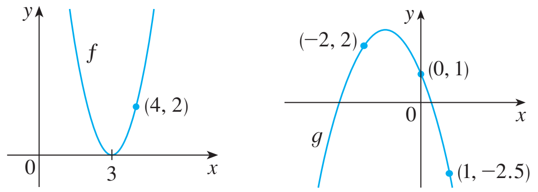
(b) Find an equation for the family of linear functions such that $f(2) = 1$ and sketch several members of the family.

(c) Which function belongs to both families?

8. What do all members of the family of linear functions $f(x) = 1 + m(x + 3)$ have in common? Sketch several members of the family.

9. What do all members of the family of linear functions $f(x) = c - x$ have in common? Sketch several members of the family.

10. Find expressions for the quadratic functions whose graphs are shown.



11. Find an expression for a cubic function f if $f(1) = 6$ and $f(-1) = f(0) = f(2) = 0$.

12. Recent studies indicate that the average surface temperature of the earth has been rising steadily. Some scientists have modeled the temperature by the linear function $T = 0.02t + 8.50$, where T is temperature in °C and t represents years since 1900.
(a) What do the slope and T-intercept represent?
(b) Use the equation to predict the average global surface temperature in 2100.

13. If the recommended adult dosage for a drug is D (in mg), then to determine the appropriate dosage c for a child of age a, pharmacists use the equation $c = 0.0417D(a + 1)$. Suppose the dosage for an adult is 200 mg.
(a) Find the slope of the graph of c. What does it represent?
(b) What is the dosage for a newborn?

14. The manager of a weekend flea market knows from past experience that if he charges x dollars for a rental space at the market, then the number y of spaces he can rent is given by the equation $y = 200 - 4x$.
(a) Sketch a graph of this linear function. (Remember that the rental charge per space and the number of spaces rented can't be negative quantities.)
(b) What do the slope, the y-intercept, and the x-intercept of the graph represent?

15. The relationship between the Fahrenheit (F) and Celsius (C) temperature scales is given by the linear function $F = \frac{9}{5}C + 32$.
(a) Sketch a graph of this function.
(b) What is the slope of the graph and what does it represent? What is the F-intercept and what does it represent?

16. Jason leaves Detroit at 2:00 PM and drives at a constant speed west along I-94. He passes Ann Arbor, 40 mi from Detroit, at 2:50 PM.
(a) Express the distance traveled in terms of the time elapsed.
(b) Draw the graph of the equation in part (a).
(c) What is the slope of this line? What does it represent?

17. Biologists have noticed that the chirping rate of crickets of a certain species is related to temperature, and the relationship appears to be very nearly linear. A cricket produces 113 chirps per minute at 70°F and 173 chirps per minute at 80°F.
(a) Find a linear equation that models the temperature T as a function of the number of chirps per minute N.
(b) What is the slope of the graph? What does it represent?
(c) If the crickets are chirping at 150 chirps per minute, estimate the temperature.

18. The manager of a furniture factory finds that it costs \$2200 to manufacture 100 chairs in one day and \$4800 to produce 300 chairs in one day.
(a) Express the cost as a function of the number of chairs produced, assuming that it is linear. Then sketch the graph.
(b) What is the slope of the graph and what does it represent?
(c) What is the y-intercept of the graph and what does it represent?

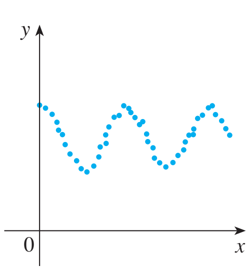
19. At the surface of the ocean, the water pressure is the same as the air pressure above the water, 15 lb/in^2. Below the surface, the water pressure increases by 4.34 lb/in^2 for every 10 ft of descent.
(a) Express the water pressure as a function of the depth below the ocean surface.
(b) At what depth is the pressure 100 lb/in^2?

20. The monthly cost of driving a car depends on the number of miles driven. Lynn found that in May it cost her \$380 to drive 480 mi and in June it cost her \$460 to drive 800 mi.
(a) Express the monthly cost C as a function of the distance driven d, assuming that a linear relationship gives a suitable model.
(b) Use part (a) to predict the cost of driving 1500 miles per month.
(c) Draw the graph of the linear function. What does the slope represent?
(d) What does the C-intercept represent?
(e) Why does a linear function give a suitable model in this situation?

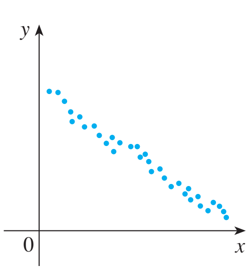
21–22 For each scatter plot, decide what type of function you might choose as a model for the data. Explain your choices.

21.

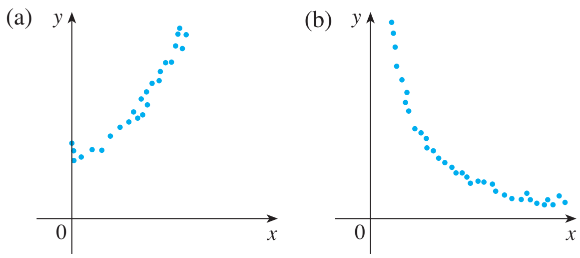
(a)



(b)



22.



23. The table shows (lifetime) peptic ulcer rates (per 100 population) for various family incomes as reported by the National Health Interview Survey.

Income	Ulcer rate (per 100 population)
\$4,000	14.1
\$6,000	13.0
\$8,000	13.4
\$12,000	12.5
\$16,000	12.0
\$20,000	12.4
\$30,000	10.5
\$45,000	9.4
\$60,000	8.2

(a) Make a scatter plot of these data and decide whether a linear model is appropriate.
(b) Find and graph a linear model using the first and last data points.
(c) Find and graph the least squares regression line.
(d) Use the linear model in part (c) to estimate the ulcer rate for an income of \$25,000.
(e) According to the model, how likely is someone with an income of \$80,000 to suffer from peptic ulcers?
(f) Do you think it would be reasonable to apply the model to someone with an income of \$200,000?

24. Biologists have observed that the chirping rate of crickets of a certain species appears to be related to temperature. The table shows the chirping rates for various temperatures.
(a) Make a scatter plot of the data.
(b) Find and graph the regression line.
(c) Use the linear model in part (b) to estimate the chirping rate at 100°F.

Temperature (°F)	Chirping rate (chirps/min)	Temperature (°F)	Chirping rate (chirps/min)
50	20	75	140
55	46	80	173
60	79	85	198
65	91	90	211
70	113		

25. Anthropologists use a linear model that relates human femur (thighbone) length to height. The model allows an anthropologist to determine the height of an individual when only a partial skeleton (including the femur) is found. Here we find the model by analyzing the data on femur length and height for the eight males given in the following table.
(a) Make a scatter plot of the data.
(b) Find and graph the regression line that models the data.
(c) An anthropologist finds a human femur of length 53 cm. How tall was the person?

Femur length (cm)	Height (cm)	Femur length (cm)	Height (cm)
50.1	178.5	44.5	168.3
48.3	173.6	42.7	165.0
45.2	164.8	39.5	155.4
44.7	163.7	38.0	155.8

26. When laboratory rats are exposed to asbestos fibers, some of them develop lung tumors. The table lists the results of several experiments by different scientists.
(a) Find the regression line for the data.
(b) Make a scatter plot and graph the regression line. Does the regression line appear to be a suitable model for the data?
(c) What does the y-intercept of the regression line represent?

Asbestos exposure (fibers/mL)	Percent of mice that develop lung tumors	Asbestos exposure (fibers/mL)	Percent of mice that develop lung tumors
50	2	1600	42
400	6	1800	37
500	5	2000	38
900	10	3000	50
1100	26		

27. The table shows world average daily oil consumption from 1985 to 2010 measured in thousands of barrels per day.
(a) Make a scatter plot and decide whether a linear model is appropriate.
(b) Find and graph the regression line.
(c) Use the linear model to estimate the oil consumption in 2002 and 2012.

Years since 1985	Thousands of barrels of oil per day
0	60,083
5	66,533
10	70,099
15	76,784
20	84,077
25	87,302

Source: US Energy Information Administration

28. The table shows average US retail residential prices of electricity from 2000 to 2012, measured in cents per kilowatt hour.
(a) Make a scatter plot. Is a linear model appropriate?
(b) Find and graph the regression line.
(c) Use your linear model from part (b) to estimate the average retail price of electricity in 2005 and 2013.

Years since 2000	Cents/kWh
0	8.24
2	8.44
4	8.95
6	10.40
8	11.26
10	11.54
12	11.58

Source: US Energy Information Administration

29. Many physical quantities are connected by *inverse square laws*, that is, by power functions of the form $f(x) = kx^{-2}$. In particular, the illumination of an object by a light source is inversely proportional to the square of the distance from the source. Suppose that after dark you are in a room with just one lamp and you are trying to read a book. The light is too dim and so you move halfway to the lamp. How much brighter is the light?

30. It makes sense that the larger the area of a region, the larger the number of species that inhabit the region. Many ecologists have modeled the species-area relation with a power function and, in particular, the number of species S of bats living in caves in central Mexico has been related to the surface area A of the caves by the equation $S = 0.7A^{0.3}$.
(a) The cave called *Misión Imposible* near Puebla, Mexico, has a surface area of $A = 60\text{ m}^2$. How many species of bats would you expect to find in that cave?
(b) If you discover that four species of bats live in a cave, estimate the area of the cave.

31. The table shows the number N of species of reptiles and amphibians inhabiting Caribbean islands and the area A of the island in square miles.
(a) Use a power function to model N as a function of A.
(b) The Caribbean island of Dominica has area 291 mi^2. How many species of reptiles and amphibians would you expect to find on Dominica?

Island	A	N
Saba	4	5
Monserrat	40	9
Puerto Rico	3,459	40
Jamaica	4,411	39
Hispaniola	29,418	84
Cuba	44,218	76

32. The table shows the mean (average) distances d of the planets from the sun (taking the unit of measurement to be the distance from the earth to the sun) and their periods T (time of revolution in years).
(a) Fit a power model to the data.
(b) Kepler's Third Law of Planetary Motion states that "The square of the period of revolution of a planet is proportional to the cube of its mean distance from the sun."
Does your model corroborate Kepler's Third Law?

Planet	d	T
Mercury	0.387	0.241
Venus	0.723	0.615
Earth	1.000	1.000
Mars	1.523	1.881
Jupiter	5.203	11.861
Saturn	9.541	29.457
Uranus	19.190	84.008
Neptune	30.086	164.784

1.3 New Functions from Old Functions

In this section we start with the basic functions we discussed in Section 1.2 and obtain new functions by shifting, stretching, and reflecting their graphs. We also show how to combine pairs of functions by the standard arithmetic operations and by composition.

Transformations of Functions

By applying certain transformations to the graph of a given function we can obtain the graphs of related functions. This will give us the ability to sketch the graphs of many functions quickly by hand. It will also enable us to write equations for given graphs.

Let's first consider **translations**. If c is a positive number, then the graph of $y = f(x) + c$ is just the graph of $y = f(x)$ shifted upward a distance of c units (because each y-coordinate is increased by the same number c). Likewise, if $g(x) = f(x - c)$, where $c > 0$, then the value of g at x is the same as the value of f at $x - c$ (c units to the left of x). Therefore the graph of $y = f(x - c)$ is just the graph of $y = f(x)$ shifted c units to the right (see Figure 1).

Vertical and Horizontal Shifts Suppose $c > 0$. To obtain the graph of

$y = f(x) + c$, shift the graph of $y = f(x)$ a distance c units upward
$y = f(x) - c$, shift the graph of $y = f(x)$ a distance c units downward
$y = f(x - c)$, shift the graph of $y = f(x)$ a distance c units to the right
$y = f(x + c)$, shift the graph of $y = f(x)$ a distance c units to the left

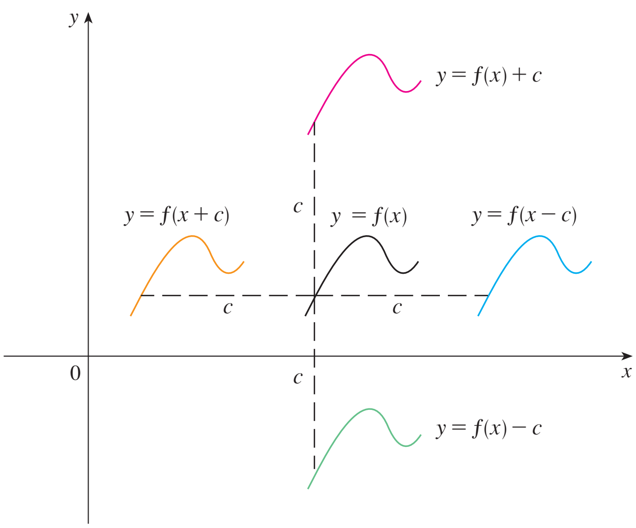


FIGURE 1 Translating the graph of f

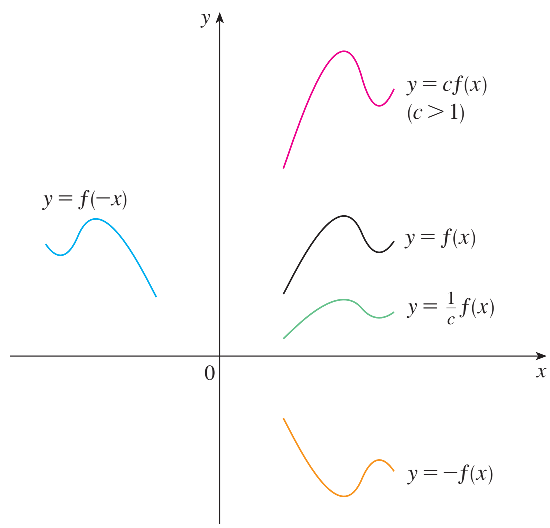


FIGURE 2 Stretching and reflecting the graph of f

Now let's consider the **stretching** and **reflecting** transformations. If $c > 1$, then the graph of $y = cf(x)$ is the graph of $y = f(x)$ stretched by a factor of c in the vertical direction (because each y-coordinate is multiplied by the same number c). The graph of $y = -f(x)$ is the graph of $y = f(x)$ reflected about the x-axis because the point (x, y) is replaced by the point $(x, -y)$. (See Figure 2 and the following chart, where the results of other stretching, shrinking, and reflecting transformations are also given.)

Vertical and Horizontal Stretching and Reflecting Suppose $c > 1$. To obtain the graph of

$y = cf(x)$, stretch the graph of $y = f(x)$ vertically by a factor of c
$y = (1/c)f(x)$, shrink the graph of $y = f(x)$ vertically by a factor of c
$y = f(cx)$, shrink the graph of $y = f(x)$ horizontally by a factor of c
$y = f(x/c)$, stretch the graph of $y = f(x)$ horizontally by a factor of c
$y = -f(x)$, reflect the graph of $y = f(x)$ about the x-axis
$y = f(-x)$, reflect the graph of $y = f(x)$ about the y-axis

Figure 3 illustrates these stretching transformations when applied to the cosine function with $c = 2$. For instance, in order to get the graph of $y = 2\cos x$ we multiply the y-coordinate of each point on the graph of $y = \cos x$ by 2. This means that the graph of $y = \cos x$ gets stretched vertically by a factor of 2.

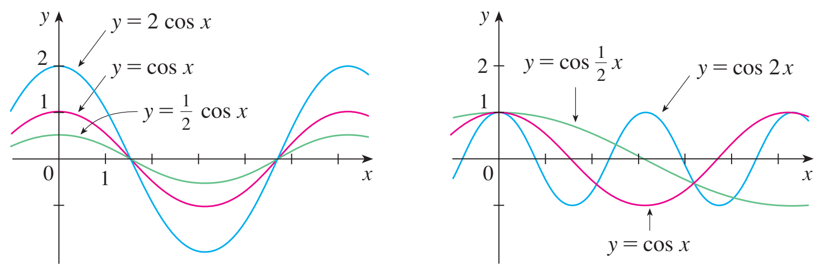
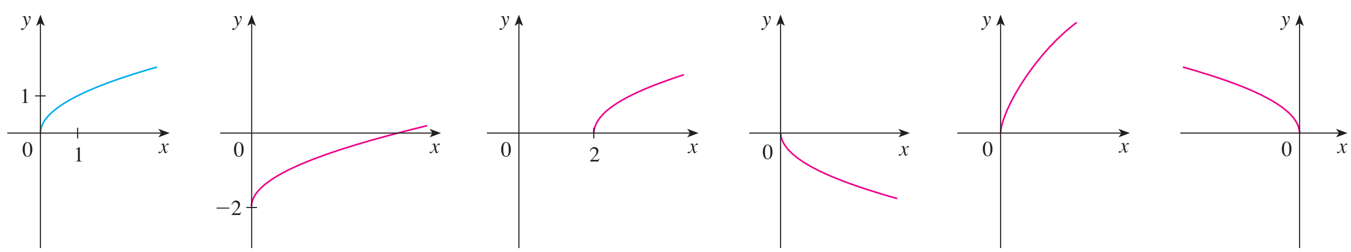


FIGURE 3

EXAMPLE 1 Given the graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$, use transformations to graph $y = \sqrt{x} - 2$, $y = \sqrt{x - 2}$, $y = -\sqrt{x}$, $y = 2\sqrt{x}$, and $y = \sqrt{-x}$.

SOLUTION The graph of the square root function $y = \sqrt{x}$, obtained from Figure 1.2.13(a), is shown in Figure 4(a). In the other parts of the figure we sketch $y = \sqrt{x} - 2$ by shifting 2 units downward, $y = \sqrt{x - 2}$ by shifting 2 units to the right, $y = -\sqrt{x}$ by reflecting about the x-axis, $y = 2\sqrt{x}$ by stretching vertically by a factor of 2, and $y = \sqrt{-x}$ by reflecting about the y-axis.



(a) $y = \sqrt{x}$ (b) $y = \sqrt{x} - 2$ (c) $y = \sqrt{x - 2}$ (d) $y = -\sqrt{x}$ (e) $y = 2\sqrt{x}$ (f) $y = \sqrt{-x}$

FIGURE 4

■

EXAMPLE 2 Sketch the graph of the function $f(x) = x^2 + 6x + 10$.

SOLUTION Completing the square, we write the equation of the graph as

$$y = x^2 + 6x + 10 = (x + 3)^2 + 1$$

This means we obtain the desired graph by starting with the parabola $y = x^2$ and shifting 3 units to the left and then 1 unit upward (see Figure 5).

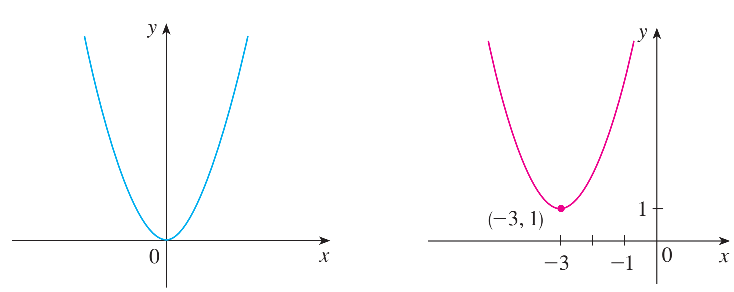


FIGURE 5

(a) $y = x^2$ (b) $y = (x + 3)^2 + 1$

■

EXAMPLE 3 Sketch the graphs of the following functions.

(a) $y = \sin 2x$ (b) $y = 1 - \sin x$

SOLUTION

(a) We obtain the graph of $y = \sin 2x$ from that of $y = \sin x$ by compressing horizontally by a factor of 2. (See Figures 6 and 7.) Thus, whereas the period of $y = \sin x$ is 2π, the period of $y = \sin 2x$ is $2\pi/2 = \pi$.

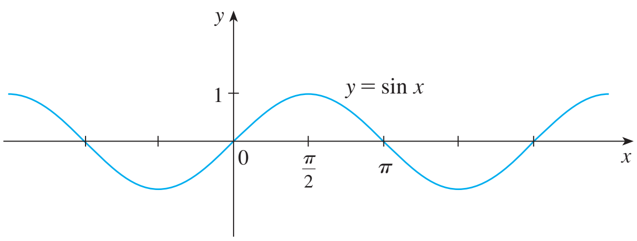


FIGURE 6

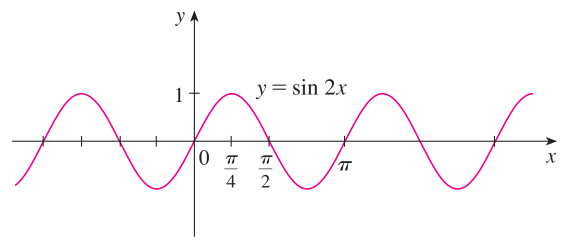
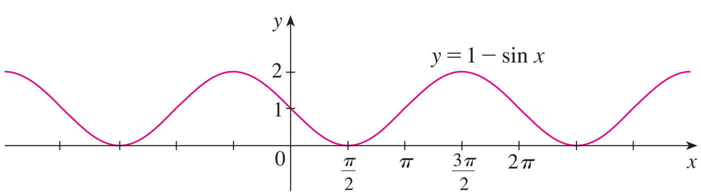


FIGURE 7

(b) To obtain the graph of $y = 1 - \sin x$, we again start with $y = \sin x$. We reflect about the x-axis to get the graph of $y = -\sin x$ and then we shift 1 unit upward to get $y = 1 - \sin x$. (See Figure 8.)

FIGURE 8



■

EXAMPLE 4 Figure 9 shows graphs of the number of hours of daylight as functions of the time of the year at several latitudes. Given that Philadelphia is located at approximately 40°N latitude, find a function that models the length of daylight at Philadelphia.

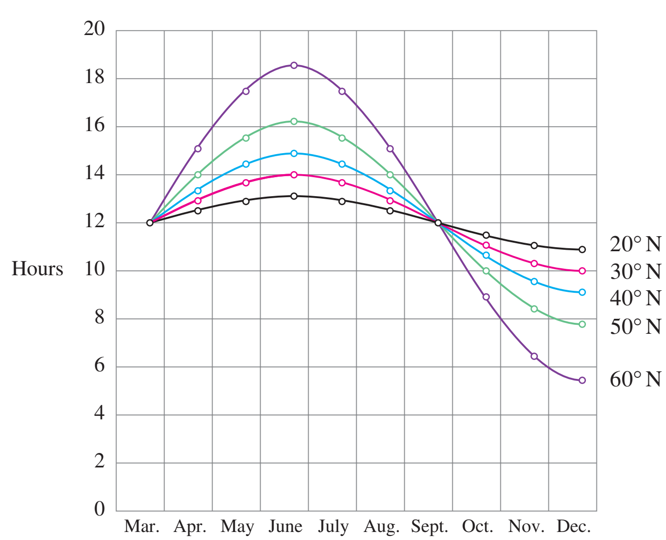


FIGURE 9
Graph of the length of daylight from March 21 through December 21 at various latitudes

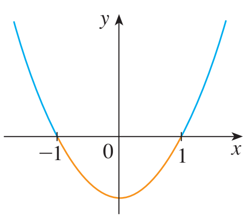
Source: Adapted from L. Harrison, *Daylight, Twilight, Darkness and Time* (New York: Silver, Burdett, 1935), 40.

SOLUTION Notice that each curve resembles a shifted and stretched sine function. By looking at the blue curve we see that, at the latitude of Philadelphia, daylight lasts about 14.8 hours on June 21 and 9.2 hours on December 21, so the amplitude of the curve (the factor by which we have to stretch the sine curve vertically) is $\frac{1}{2}(14.8 - 9.2) = 2.8$.

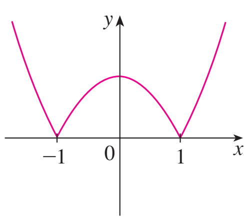
By what factor do we need to stretch the sine curve horizontally if we measure the time t in days? Because there are about 365 days in a year, the period of our model should be 365. But the period of $y = \sin t$ is 2π, so the horizontal stretching factor is $2\pi/365$.

We also notice that the curve begins its cycle on March 21, the 80th day of the year, so we have to shift the curve 80 units to the right. In addition, we shift it 12 units upward. Therefore we model the length of daylight in Philadelphia on the tth day of the year by the function

$$L(t) = 12 + 2.8 \sin\left[\frac{2\pi}{365}(t - 80)\right]$$ ■



(a) $y = x^2 - 1$



(b) $y = |x^2 - 1|$

FIGURE 10

Another transformation of some interest is taking the *absolute value* of a function. If $y = |f(x)|$, then according to the definition of absolute value, $y = f(x)$ when $f(x) \geqslant 0$ and $y = -f(x)$ when $f(x) < 0$. This tells us how to get the graph of $y = |f(x)|$ from the graph of $y = f(x)$: The part of the graph that lies above the x-axis remains the same; the part that lies below the x-axis is reflected about the x-axis.

EXAMPLE 5 Sketch the graph of the function $y = |x^2 - 1|$.

SOLUTION We first graph the parabola $y = x^2 - 1$ in Figure 10(a) by shifting the parabola $y = x^2$ downward 1 unit. We see that the graph lies below the x-axis when $-1 < x < 1$, so we reflect that part of the graph about the x-axis to obtain the graph of $y = |x^2 - 1|$ in Figure 10(b). ■

Combinations of Functions

Two functions f and g can be combined to form new functions $f + g$, $f - g$, fg, and f/g in a manner similar to the way we add, subtract, multiply, and divide real numbers. The sum and difference functions are defined by

$$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x) \qquad (f - g)(x) = f(x) - g(x)$$

If the domain of f is A and the domain of g is B, then the domain of $f + g$ is the intersection $A \cap B$ because both $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ have to be defined. For example, the domain of $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ is $A = [0, \infty)$ and the domain of $g(x) = \sqrt{2 - x}$ is $B = (-\infty, 2]$, so the domain of $(f + g)(x) = \sqrt{x} + \sqrt{2 - x}$ is $A \cap B = [0, 2]$.

Similarly, the product and quotient functions are defined by

$$(fg)(x) = f(x)g(x) \qquad \left(\frac{f}{g}\right)(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$$

The domain of fg is $A \cap B$, but we can't divide by 0 and so the domain of f/g is $\{x \in A \cap B \mid g(x) \neq 0\}$. For instance, if $f(x) = x^2$ and $g(x) = x - 1$, then the domain of the rational function $(f/g)(x) = x^2/(x - 1)$ is $\{x \mid x \neq 1\}$, or $(-\infty, 1) \cup (1, \infty)$.

There is another way of combining two functions to obtain a new function. For example, suppose that $y = f(u) = \sqrt{u}$ and $u = g(x) = x^2 + 1$. Since y is a function of u and u is, in turn, a function of x, it follows that y is ultimately a function of x.

We compute this by substitution:

$$y = f(u) = f(g(x)) = f(x^2 + 1) = \sqrt{x^2 + 1}$$

The procedure is called *composition* because the new function is *composed* of the two given functions f and g.

In general, given any two functions f and g, we start with a number x in the domain of g and calculate $g(x)$. If this number $g(x)$ is in the domain of f, then we can calculate the value of $f(g(x))$. Notice that the output of one function is used as the input to the next function. The result is a new function $h(x) = f(g(x))$ obtained by substituting g into f. It is called the *composition* (or *composite*) of f and g and is denoted by $f \circ g$ ("f circle g").

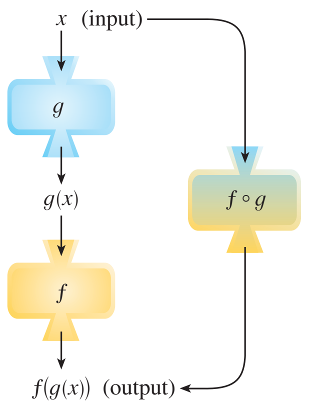


FIGURE 11
The $f \circ g$ machine is composed of the g machine (first) and then the f machine.

Definition Given two functions f and g, the **composite function** $f \circ g$ (also called the **composition** of f and g) is defined by

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x))$$

The domain of $f \circ g$ is the set of all x in the domain of g such that $g(x)$ is in the domain of f. In other words, $(f \circ g)(x)$ is defined whenever both $g(x)$ and $f(g(x))$ are defined. Figure 11 shows how to picture $f \circ g$ in terms of machines.

EXAMPLE 6 If $f(x) = x^2$ and $g(x) = x - 3$, find the composite functions $f \circ g$ and $g \circ f$.

SOLUTION We have

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)) = f(x - 3) = (x - 3)^2$$

$$(g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x)) = g(x^2) = x^2 - 3$$ ■

NOTE You can see from Example 6 that, in general, $f \circ g \neq g \circ f$. Remember, the notation $f \circ g$ means that the function g is applied first and then f is applied second. In Example 6, $f \circ g$ is the function that *first* subtracts 3 and *then* squares; $g \circ f$ is the function that *first* squares and *then* subtracts 3.

EXAMPLE 7 If $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ and $g(x) = \sqrt{2 - x}$, find each of the following functions and their domains.

(a) $f \circ g$ (b) $g \circ f$ (c) $f \circ f$ (d) $g \circ g$

SOLUTION

(a) $$(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)) = f\left(\sqrt{2 - x}\right) = \sqrt{\sqrt{2 - x}} = \sqrt[4]{2 - x}$$

The domain of $f \circ g$ is $\{x \mid 2 - x \geqslant 0\} = \{x \mid x \leqslant 2\} = (-\infty, 2]$.

(b) $$(g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x)) = g\left(\sqrt{x}\right) = \sqrt{2 - \sqrt{x}}$$

For $\sqrt{x}$ to be defined we must have $x \geqslant 0$. For $\sqrt{2 - \sqrt{x}}$ to be defined we must have $2 - \sqrt{x} \geqslant 0$, that is, $\sqrt{x} \leqslant 2$, or $x \leqslant 4$. Thus we have $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$, so the domain of $g \circ f$ is the closed interval $[0, 4]$.

If $0 \leqslant a \leqslant b$, then $a^2 \leqslant b^2$.

(c) $$(f \circ f)(x) = f(f(x)) = f\left(\sqrt{x}\right) = \sqrt{\sqrt{x}} = \sqrt[4]{x}$$

The domain of $f \circ f$ is $[0, \infty)$.

(d) $$(g \circ g)(x) = g(g(x)) = g\left(\sqrt{2 - x}\,\right) = \sqrt{2 - \sqrt{2 - x}}$$

This expression is defined when both $2 - x \geqslant 0$ and $2 - \sqrt{2 - x} \geqslant 0$. The first inequality means $x \leqslant 2$, and the second is equivalent to $\sqrt{2 - x} \leqslant 2$, or $2 - x \leqslant 4$, or $x \geqslant -2$. Thus $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$, so the domain of $g \circ g$ is the closed interval $[-2, 2]$. ■

It is possible to take the composition of three or more functions. For instance, the composite function $f \circ g \circ h$ is found by first applying h, then g, and then f as follows:

$$(f \circ g \circ h)(x) = f(g(h(x)))$$

EXAMPLE 8 Find $f \circ g \circ h$ if $f(x) = x/(x + 1)$, $g(x) = x^{10}$, and $h(x) = x + 3$.

SOLUTION
$$\begin{aligned}(f \circ g \circ h)(x) &= f(g(h(x))) = f(g(x + 3)) \\ &= f((x + 3)^{10}) = \frac{(x + 3)^{10}}{(x + 3)^{10} + 1}\end{aligned}$$ ■

So far we have used composition to build complicated functions from simpler ones. But in calculus it is often useful to be able to *decompose* a complicated function into simpler ones, as in the following example.

EXAMPLE 9 Given $F(x) = \cos^2(x + 9)$, find functions f, g, and h such that $F = f \circ g \circ h$.

SOLUTION Since $F(x) = [\cos(x + 9)]^2$, the formula for F says: First add 9, then take the cosine of the result, and finally square. So we let

$$h(x) = x + 9 \qquad g(x) = \cos x \qquad f(x) = x^2$$

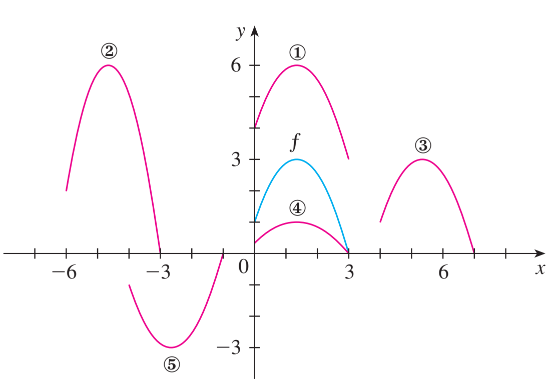
Then $$\begin{aligned}(f \circ g \circ h)(x) &= f(g(h(x))) = f(g(x + 9)) = f(\cos(x + 9)) \\ &= [\cos(x + 9)]^2 = F(x)\end{aligned}$$ ■

1.3 EXERCISES

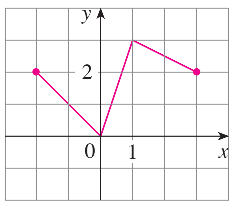
1. Suppose the graph of f is given. Write equations for the graphs that are obtained from the graph of f as follows.
(a) Shift 3 units upward.
(b) Shift 3 units downward.
(c) Shift 3 units to the right.
(d) Shift 3 units to the left.
(e) Reflect about the x-axis.
(f) Reflect about the y-axis.
(g) Stretch vertically by a factor of 3.
(h) Shrink vertically by a factor of 3.

2. Explain how each graph is obtained from the graph of $y = f(x)$.
(a) $y = f(x) + 8$ (b) $y = f(x + 8)$
(c) $y = 8f(x)$ (d) $y = f(8x)$
(e) $y = -f(x) - 1$ (f) $y = 8f\left(\frac{1}{8}x\right)$

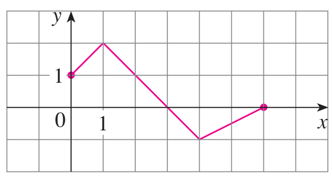
3. The graph of $y = f(x)$ is given. Match each equation with its graph and give reasons for your choices.
(a) $y = f(x - 4)$ (b) $y = f(x) + 3$
(c) $y = \frac{1}{3}f(x)$ (d) $y = -f(x + 4)$
(e) $y = 2f(x + 6)$



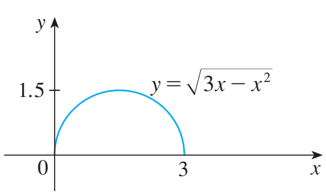
4. The graph of f is given. Draw the graphs of the following functions.
(a) $y = f(x) - 3$ (b) $y = f(x + 1)$
(c) $y = \frac{1}{2}f(x)$ (d) $y = -f(x)$



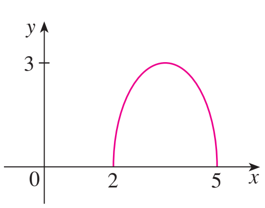
5. The graph of f is given. Use it to graph the following functions.
(a) $y = f(2x)$ (b) $y = f\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$
(c) $y = f(-x)$ (d) $y = -f(-x)$



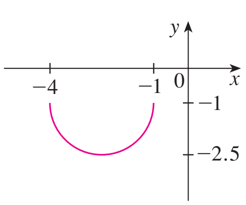
6–7 The graph of $y = \sqrt{3x - x^2}$ is given. Use transformations to create a function whose graph is as shown.



6.



7.



8. (a) How is the graph of $y = 2 \sin x$ related to the graph of $y = \sin x$? Use your answer and Figure 6 to sketch the graph of $y = 2 \sin x$.
(b) How is the graph of $y = 1 + \sqrt{x}$ related to the graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$? Use your answer and Figure 4(a) to sketch the graph of $y = 1 + \sqrt{x}$.

9–24 Graph the function by hand, not by plotting points, but by starting with the graph of one of the standard functions given in Section 1.2, and then applying the appropriate transformations.

9. $y = -x^2$
10. $y = (x - 3)^2$
11. $y = x^3 + 1$
12. $y = 1 - \dfrac{1}{x}$
13. $y = 2 \cos 3x$
14. $y = 2\sqrt{x + 1}$
15. $y = x^2 - 4x + 5$
16. $y = 1 + \sin \pi x$
17. $y = 2 - \sqrt{x}$
18. $y = 3 - 2 \cos x$
19. $y = \sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$
20. $y = |x| - 2$
21. $y = |x - 2|$
22. $y = \dfrac{1}{4}\tan\left(x - \dfrac{\pi}{4}\right)$
23. $y = \left|\sqrt{x} - 1\right|$
24. $y = |\cos \pi x|$

25. The city of New Orleans is located at latitude 30°N. Use Figure 9 to find a function that models the number of hours of daylight at New Orleans as a function of the time of year. To check the accuracy of your model, use the fact that on March 31 the sun rises at 5:51 AM and sets at 6:18 PM in New Orleans.

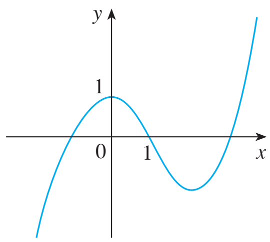
26. A variable star is one whose brightness alternately increases and decreases. For the most visible variable star, Delta Cephei, the time between periods of maximum brightness is 5.4 days, the average brightness (or magnitude) of the star is 4.0, and its brightness varies by ±0.35 magnitude. Find a function that models the brightness of Delta Cephei as a function of time.

27. Some of the highest tides in the world occur in the Bay of Fundy on the Atlantic Coast of Canada. At Hopewell Cape the water depth at low tide is about 2.0 m and at high tide it is about 12.0 m. The natural period of oscillation is about 12 hours and on June 30, 2009, high tide occurred at 6:45 AM. Find a function involving the cosine function that models the water depth $D(t)$ (in meters) as a function of time t (in hours after midnight) on that day.

28. In a normal respiratory cycle the volume of air that moves into and out of the lungs is about 500 mL. The reserve and residue volumes of air that remain in the lungs occupy about 2000 mL and a single respiratory cycle for an average human takes about 4 seconds. Find a model for the total volume of air $V(t)$ in the lungs as a function of time.

29. (a) How is the graph of $y = f(|x|)$ related to the graph of f?
(b) Sketch the graph of $y = \sin |x|$.
(c) Sketch the graph of $y = \sqrt{|x|}$.

30. Use the given graph of f to sketch the graph of $y = 1/f(x)$. Which features of f are the most important in sketching $y = 1/f(x)$? Explain how they are used.



31–32 Find (a) $f + g$, (b) $f - g$, (c) fg, and (d) f/g and state their domains.

31. $f(x) = x^3 + 2x^2, \quad g(x) = 3x^2 - 1$

32. $f(x) = \sqrt{3 - x}, \quad g(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - 1}$

33–38 Find the functions (a) $f \circ g$, (b) $g \circ f$, (c) $f \circ f$, and (d) $g \circ g$ and their domains.

33. $f(x) = 3x + 5, \quad g(x) = x^2 + x$

34. $f(x) = x^3 - 2, \quad g(x) = 1 - 4x$

35. $f(x) = \sqrt{x + 1}, \quad g(x) = 4x - 3$

36. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad g(x) = x^2 + 1$

37. $f(x) = x + \dfrac{1}{x}, \quad g(x) = \dfrac{x + 1}{x + 2}$

38. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{1 + x}, \quad g(x) = \sin 2x$

39–42 Find $f \circ g \circ h$.

39. $f(x) = 3x - 2, \quad g(x) = \sin x, \quad h(x) = x^2$

40. $f(x) = |x - 4|, \quad g(x) = 2^x, \quad h(x) = \sqrt{x}$

41. $f(x) = \sqrt{x - 3}, \quad g(x) = x^2, \quad h(x) = x^3 + 2$

42. $f(x) = \tan x, \quad g(x) = \dfrac{x}{x - 1}, \quad h(x) = \sqrt[3]{x}$

43–48 Express the function in the form $f \circ g$.

43. $F(x) = (2x + x^2)^4$

44. $F(x) = \cos^2 x$

45. $F(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt[3]{x}}{1 + \sqrt[3]{x}}$

46. $G(x) = \sqrt[3]{\dfrac{x}{1 + x}}$

47. $v(t) = \sec(t^2)\tan(t^2)$

48. $u(t) = \dfrac{\tan t}{1 + \tan t}$

49–51 Express the function in the form $f \circ g \circ h$.

49. $R(x) = \sqrt{\sqrt{x} - 1}$

50. $H(x) = \sqrt[8]{2 + |x|}$

51. $S(t) = \sin^2(\cos t)$

52. Use the table to evaluate each expression.

(a) $f(g(1))$ (b) $g(f(1))$ (c) $f(f(1))$

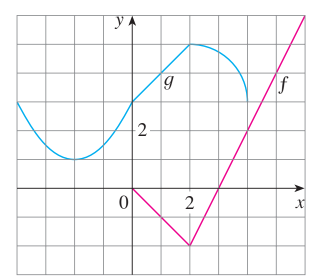
(d) $g(g(1))$ (e) $(g \circ f)(3)$ (f) $(f \circ g)(6)$

x	1	2	3	4	5	6
$f(x)$	3	1	4	2	2	5
$g(x)$	6	3	2	1	2	3

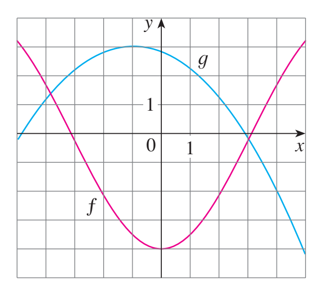
53. Use the given graphs of f and g to evaluate each expression, or explain why it is undefined.

(a) $f(g(2))$ (b) $g(f(0))$ (c) $(f \circ g)(0)$

(d) $(g \circ f)(6)$ (e) $(g \circ g)(-2)$ (f) $(f \circ f)(4)$



54. Use the given graphs of f and g to estimate the value of $f(g(x))$ for $x = -5, -4, -3, \ldots, 5$. Use these estimates to sketch a rough graph of $f \circ g$.



55. A stone is dropped into a lake, creating a circular ripple that travels outward at a speed of 60 cm/s.

(a) Express the radius r of this circle as a function of the time t (in seconds).

(b) If A is the area of this circle as a function of the radius, find $A \circ r$ and interpret it.

56. A spherical balloon is being inflated and the radius of the balloon is increasing at a rate of 2 cm/s.

(a) Express the radius r of the balloon as a function of the time t (in seconds).

(b) If V is the volume of the balloon as a function of the radius, find $V \circ r$ and interpret it.

57. A ship is moving at a speed of 30 km/h parallel to a straight shoreline. The ship is 6 km from shore and it passes a lighthouse at noon.

(a) Express the distance s between the lighthouse and the ship as a function of d, the distance the ship has traveled since noon; that is, find f so that $s = f(d)$.

(b) Express d as a function of t, the time elapsed since noon; that is, find g so that $d = g(t)$.

(c) Find $f \circ g$. What does this function represent?

58. An airplane is flying at a speed of 350 mi/h at an altitude of one mile and passes directly over a radar station at time $t = 0$.

(a) Express the horizontal distance d (in miles) that the plane has flown as a function of t.

(b) Express the distance s between the plane and the radar station as a function of d.

(c) Use composition to express s as a function of t.

59. The **Heaviside function** H is defined by

$$H(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } t < 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } t \geqslant 0 \end{cases}$$

It is used in the study of electric circuits to represent the sudden surge of electric current, or voltage, when a switch is instantaneously turned on.

(a) Sketch the graph of the Heaviside function.

(b) Sketch the graph of the voltage $V(t)$ in a circuit if the switch is turned on at time $t = 0$ and 120 volts are applied instantaneously to the circuit. Write a formula for $V(t)$ in terms of $H(t)$.

(c) Sketch the graph of the voltage $V(t)$ in a circuit if the switch is turned on at time $t = 5$ seconds and 240 volts are applied instantaneously to the circuit. Write a formula for $V(t)$ in terms of $H(t)$. (Note that starting at $t = 5$ corresponds to a translation.)

60. The Heaviside function defined in Exercise 59 can also be used to define the **ramp function** $y = ctH(t)$, which represents a gradual increase in voltage or current in a circuit.

(a) Sketch the graph of the ramp function $y = tH(t)$.

(b) Sketch the graph of the voltage $V(t)$ in a circuit if the switch is turned on at time $t = 0$ and the voltage is gradually increased to 120 volts over a 60-second time interval. Write a formula for $V(t)$ in terms of $H(t)$ for $t \leqslant 60$.

(c) Sketch the graph of the voltage $V(t)$ in a circuit if the switch is turned on at time $t = 7$ seconds and the voltage is gradually increased to 100 volts over a period of 25 seconds. Write a formula for $V(t)$ in terms of $H(t)$ for $t \leqslant 32$.

61. Let f and g be linear functions with equations $f(x) = m_1x + b_1$ and $g(x) = m_2x + b_2$. Is $f \circ g$ also a linear function? If so, what is the slope of its graph?

62. If you invest x dollars at 4% interest compounded annually, then the amount $A(x)$ of the investment after one year is $A(x) = 1.04x$. Find $A \circ A$, $A \circ A \circ A$, and $A \circ A \circ A \circ A$. What do these compositions represent? Find a formula for the composition of n copies of A.

63. (a) If $g(x) = 2x + 1$ and $h(x) = 4x^2 + 4x + 7$, find a function f such that $f \circ g = h$. (Think about what operations you would have to perform on the formula for g to end up with the formula for h.)

(b) If $f(x) = 3x + 5$ and $h(x) = 3x^2 + 3x + 2$, find a function g such that $f \circ g = h$.

64. If $f(x) = x + 4$ and $h(x) = 4x - 1$, find a function g such that $g \circ f = h$.

65. Suppose g is an even function and let $h = f \circ g$. Is h always an even function?

66. Suppose g is an odd function and let $h = f \circ g$. Is h always an odd function? What if f is odd? What if f is even?

1.4 Exponential Functions

The function $f(x) = 2^x$ is called an *exponential function* because the variable, x, is the exponent. It should not be confused with the power function $g(x) = x^2$, in which the variable is the base.

In general, an **exponential function** is a function of the form

$$f(x) = b^x$$

where b is a positive constant. Let's recall what this means.

In Appendix G we present an alternative approach to the exponential and logarithmic functions using integral calculus.

If $x = n$, a positive integer, then

$$b^n = \underbrace{b \cdot b \cdot \cdots \cdot b}_{n \text{ factors}}$$

If $x = 0$, then $b^0 = 1$, and if $x = -n$, where n is a positive integer, then

$$b^{-n} = \frac{1}{b^n}$$

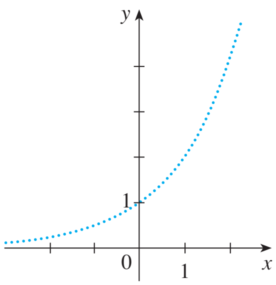


FIGURE 1
Representation of $y = 2^x$, x rational

If x is a rational number, $x = p/q$, where p and q are integers and $q > 0$, then

$$b^x = b^{p/q} = \sqrt[q]{b^p} = \left(\sqrt[q]{b}\right)^p$$

But what is the meaning of b^x if x is an irrational number? For instance, what is meant by $2^{\sqrt{3}}$ or 5^π?

To help us answer this question we first look at the graph of the function $y = 2^x$, where x is rational. A representation of this graph is shown in Figure 1. We want to enlarge the domain of $y = 2^x$ to include both rational and irrational numbers.

There are holes in the graph in Figure 1 corresponding to irrational values of x. We want to fill in the holes by defining $f(x) = 2^x$, where $x \in \mathbb{R}$, so that f is an increasing function. In particular, since the irrational number $\sqrt{3}$ satisfies

$$1.7 < \sqrt{3} < 1.8$$

we must have

$$2^{1.7} < 2^{\sqrt{3}} < 2^{1.8}$$

and we know what $2^{1.7}$ and $2^{1.8}$ mean because 1.7 and 1.8 are rational numbers. Similarly, if we use better approximations for $\sqrt{3}$, we obtain better approximations for $2^{\sqrt{3}}$:

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
1.73 < \sqrt{3} < 1.74 & \Rightarrow & 2^{1.73} < 2^{\sqrt{3}} < 2^{1.74} \\
1.732 < \sqrt{3} < 1.733 & \Rightarrow & 2^{1.732} < 2^{\sqrt{3}} < 2^{1.733} \\
1.7320 < \sqrt{3} < 1.7321 & \Rightarrow & 2^{1.7320} < 2^{\sqrt{3}} < 2^{1.7321} \\
1.73205 < \sqrt{3} < 1.73206 & \Rightarrow & 2^{1.73205} < 2^{\sqrt{3}} < 2^{1.73206} \\
\vdots \quad \vdots & & \vdots \quad \vdots
\end{array}$$

A proof of this fact is given in J. Marsden and A. Weinstein, *Calculus Unlimited* (Menlo Park, CA: Benjamin/Cummings, 1981).

It can be shown that there is exactly one number that is greater than all of the numbers

$$2^{1.7}, \quad 2^{1.73}, \quad 2^{1.732}, \quad 2^{1.7320}, \quad 2^{1.73205}, \quad \ldots$$

and less than all of the numbers

$$2^{1.8}, \quad 2^{1.74}, \quad 2^{1.733}, \quad 2^{1.7321}, \quad 2^{1.73206}, \quad \ldots$$

We define $2^{\sqrt{3}}$ to be this number. Using the preceding approximation process we can compute it correct to six decimal places:

$$2^{\sqrt{3}} \approx 3.321997$$

Similarly, we can define 2^x (or b^x, if $b > 0$) where x is any irrational number. Figure 2 shows how all the holes in Figure 1 have been filled to complete the graph of the function $f(x) = 2^x$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

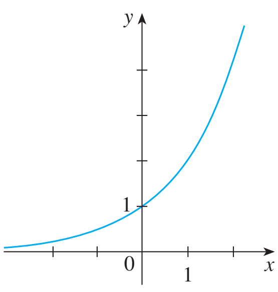


FIGURE 2
$y = 2^x$, x real

The graphs of members of the family of functions $y = b^x$ are shown in Figure 3 for various values of the base b. Notice that all of these graphs pass through the same point $(0, 1)$ because $b^0 = 1$ for $b \neq 0$. Notice also that as the base b gets larger, the exponential function grows more rapidly (for $x > 0$).

If $0 < b < 1$, then b^x approaches 0 as x becomes large. If $b > 1$, then b^x approaches 0 as x decreases through negative values. In both cases the x-axis is a horizontal asymptote. These matters are discussed in Section 2.6.

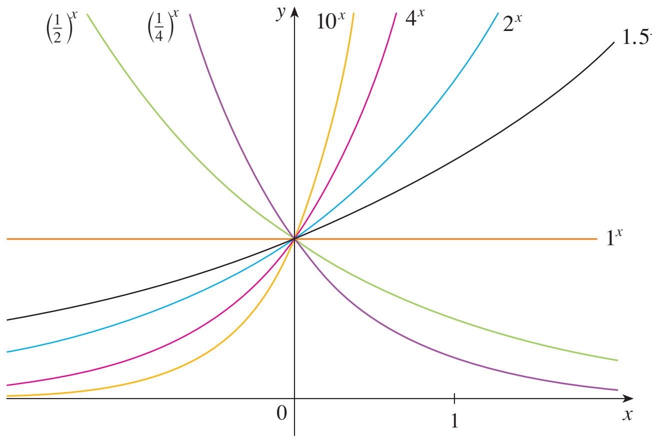


FIGURE 3

You can see from Figure 3 that there are basically three kinds of exponential functions $y = b^x$. If $0 < b < 1$, the exponential function decreases; if $b = 1$, it is a constant; and if $b > 1$, it increases. These three cases are illustrated in Figure 4. Observe that if $b \neq 1$, then the exponential function $y = b^x$ has domain $\mathbb{R}$ and range $(0, \infty)$. Notice also that, since $(1/b)^x = 1/b^x = b^{-x}$, the graph of $y = (1/b)^x$ is just the reflection of the graph of $y = b^x$ about the y-axis.

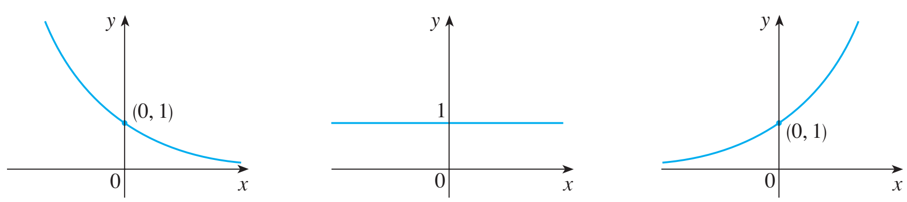


FIGURE 4 (a) $y = b^x$, $0 < b < 1$ (b) $y = 1^x$ (c) $y = b^x$, $b > 1$

One reason for the importance of the exponential function lies in the following properties. If x and y are rational numbers, then these laws are well known from elementary algebra. It can be proved that they remain true for arbitrary real numbers x and y.

www.stewartcalculus.com
For review and practice using the Laws of Exponents, click on *Review of Algebra.*

Laws of Exponents If a and b are positive numbers and x and y are any real numbers, then

1. $b^{x+y} = b^x b^y$ **2.** $b^{x-y} = \dfrac{b^x}{b^y}$ **3.** $(b^x)^y = b^{xy}$ **4.** $(ab)^x = a^x b^x$

EXAMPLE 1 Sketch the graph of the function $y = 3 - 2^x$ and determine its domain and range.

For a review of reflecting and shifting graphs, see Section 1.3.

SOLUTION First we reflect the graph of $y = 2^x$ [shown in Figures 2 and 5(a)] about the x-axis to get the graph of $y = -2^x$ in Figure 5(b). Then we shift the graph of $y = -2^x$

upward 3 units to obtain the graph of $y = 3 - 2^x$ in Figure 5(c). The domain is $\mathbb{R}$ and the range is $(-\infty, 3)$.

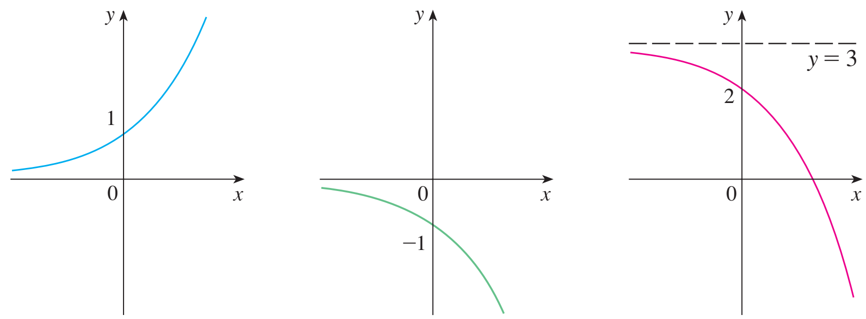


FIGURE 5 (a) $y = 2^x$ (b) $y = -2^x$ (c) $y = 3 - 2^x$ ■

EXAMPLE 2 Use a graphing device to compare the exponential function $f(x) = 2^x$ and the power function $g(x) = x^2$. Which function grows more quickly when x is large?

SOLUTION Figure 6 shows both functions graphed in the viewing rectangle $[-2, 6]$ by $[0, 40]$. We see that the graphs intersect three times, but for $x > 4$ the graph of $f(x) = 2^x$ stays above the graph of $g(x) = x^2$. Figure 7 gives a more global view and shows that for large values of x, the exponential function $y = 2^x$ grows far more rapidly than the power function $y = x^2$.

Example 2 shows that $y = 2^x$ increases more quickly than $y = x^2$. To demonstrate just how quickly $f(x) = 2^x$ increases, let's perform the following thought experiment. Suppose we start with a piece of paper a thousandth of an inch thick and we fold it in half 50 times. Each time we fold the paper in half, the thickness of the paper doubles, so the thickness of the resulting paper would be $2^{50}/1000$ inches. How thick do you think that is? It works out to be more than 17 million miles!

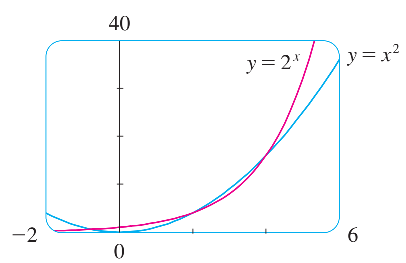


FIGURE 6

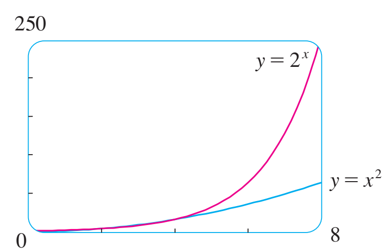


FIGURE 7 ■

Applications of Exponential Functions

The exponential function occurs very frequently in mathematical models of nature and society. Here we indicate briefly how it arises in the description of population growth and radioactive decay. In later chapters we will pursue these and other applications in greater detail.

First we consider a population of bacteria in a homogeneous nutrient medium. Suppose that by sampling the population at certain intervals it is determined that the population doubles every hour. If the number of bacteria at time t is $p(t)$, where t is measured in hours, and the initial population is $p(0) = 1000$, then we have

$$p(1) = 2p(0) = 2 \times 1000$$

$$p(2) = 2p(1) = 2^2 \times 1000$$

$$p(3) = 2p(2) = 2^3 \times 1000$$

It seems from this pattern that, in general,

$$p(t) = 2^t \times 1000 = (1000)2^t$$

This population function is a constant multiple of the exponential function $y = 2^t$, so it exhibits the rapid growth that we observed in Figures 2 and 7. Under ideal conditions (unlimited space and nutrition and absence of disease) this exponential growth is typical of what actually occurs in nature.

What about the human population? Table 1 shows data for the population of the world in the 20th century and Figure 8 shows the corresponding scatter plot.

Table 1

t (years since 1900)	Population (millions)
0	1650
10	1750
20	1860
30	2070
40	2300
50	2560
60	3040
70	3710
80	4450
90	5280
100	6080
110	6870

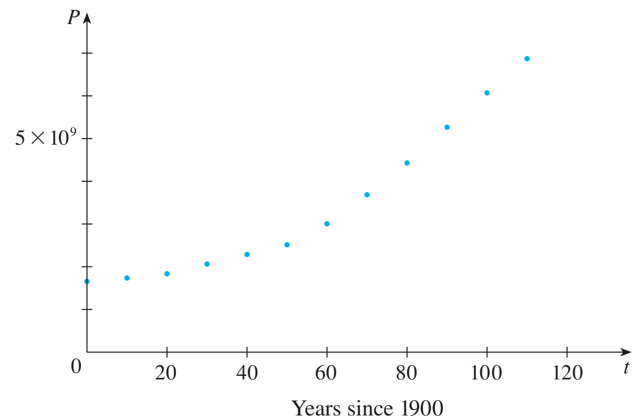


FIGURE 8
Scatter plot for world population growth

The pattern of the data points in Figure 8 suggests exponential growth, so we use a graphing calculator with exponential regression capability to apply the method of least squares and obtain the exponential model

$$P = (1436.53) \cdot (1.01395)^t$$

where $t = 0$ corresponds to 1900. Figure 9 shows the graph of this exponential function together with the original data points. We see that the exponential curve fits the data reasonably well. The period of relatively slow population growth is explained by the two world wars and the Great Depression of the 1930s.

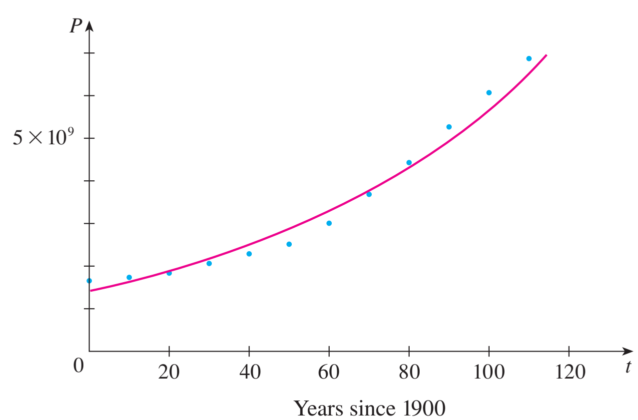


FIGURE 9
Exponential model for population growth

In 1995 a paper appeared detailing the effect of the protease inhibitor ABT-538 on the human immunodeficiency virus HIV-1.[1] Table 2 shows values of the plasma viral load $V(t)$ of patient 303, measured in RNA copies per mL, t days after ABT-538 treatment was begun. The corresponding scatter plot is shown in Figure 10.

Table 2

t (days)	$V(t)$
1	76.0
4	53.0
8	18.0
11	9.4
15	5.2
22	3.6

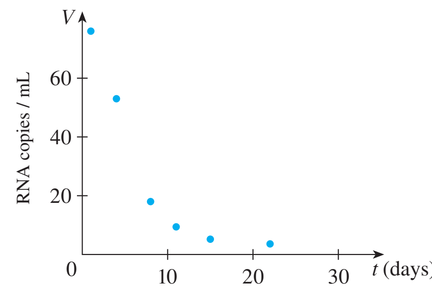


FIGURE 10 Plasma viral load in patient 303

The rather dramatic decline of the viral load that we see in Figure 10 reminds us of the graphs of the exponential function $y = b^x$ in Figures 3 and 4(a) for the case where the base b is less than 1. So let's model the function $V(t)$ by an exponential function. Using a graphing calculator or computer to fit the data in Table 2 with an exponential function of the form $y = a \cdot b^t$, we obtain the model

$$V = 96.39785 \cdot (0.818656)^t$$

In Figure 11 we graph this exponential function with the data points and see that the model represents the viral load reasonably well for the first month of treatment.

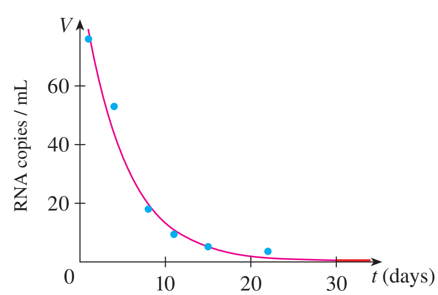


FIGURE 11
Exponential model for viral load

We could use the graph in Figure 11 to estimate the **half-life** of V, that is, the time required for the viral load to be reduced to half its initial value (see Exercise 33). In the next example we are given the half-life of a radioactive element and asked to find the mass of a sample at any time.

EXAMPLE 3 The half-life of strontium-90, ^{90}Sr, is 25 years. This means that half of any given quantity of ^{90}Sr will disintegrate in 25 years.

(a) If a sample of ^{90}Sr has a mass of 24 mg, find an expression for the mass $m(t)$ that remains after t years.
(b) Find the mass remaining after 40 years, correct to the nearest milligram.
(c) Use a graphing device to graph $m(t)$ and use the graph to estimate the time required for the mass to be reduced to 5 mg.

---

1. D. Ho et al., "Rapid Turnover of Plasma Virions and CD4 Lymphocytes in HIV-1 Infection," *Nature* 373 (1995): 123–26.

SOLUTION

(a) The mass is initially 24 mg and is halved during each 25-year period, so

$$m(0) = 24$$

$$m(25) = \frac{1}{2}(24)$$

$$m(50) = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2}(24) = \frac{1}{2^2}(24)$$

$$m(75) = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2^2}(24) = \frac{1}{2^3}(24)$$

$$m(100) = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2^3}(24) = \frac{1}{2^4}(24)$$

From this pattern, it appears that the mass remaining after t years is

$$m(t) = \frac{1}{2^{t/25}}(24) = 24 \cdot 2^{-t/25} = 24 \cdot (2^{-1/25})^t$$

This is an exponential function with base $b = 2^{-1/25} = 1/2^{1/25}$.

(b) The mass that remains after 40 years is

$$m(40) = 24 \cdot 2^{-40/25} \approx 7.9 \text{ mg}$$

(c) We use a graphing calculator or computer to graph the function $m(t) = 24 \cdot 2^{-t/25}$ in Figure 12. We also graph the line $m = 5$ and use the cursor to estimate that $m(t) = 5$ when $t \approx 57$. So the mass of the sample will be reduced to 5 mg after about 57 years. ■

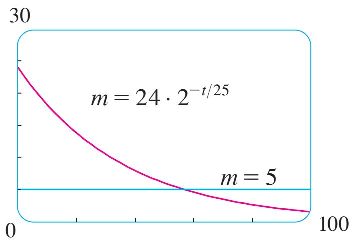


FIGURE 12

The Number e

Of all possible bases for an exponential function, there is one that is most convenient for the purposes of calculus. The choice of a base b is influenced by the way the graph of $y = b^x$ crosses the y-axis. Figures 13 and 14 show the tangent lines to the graphs of $y = 2^x$ and $y = 3^x$ at the point (0, 1). (Tangent lines will be defined precisely in Section 2.7. For present purposes, you can think of the tangent line to an exponential graph at a point as the line that touches the graph only at that point.) If we measure the slopes of these tangent lines at (0, 1), we find that $m \approx 0.7$ for $y = 2^x$ and $m \approx 1.1$ for $y = 3^x$.

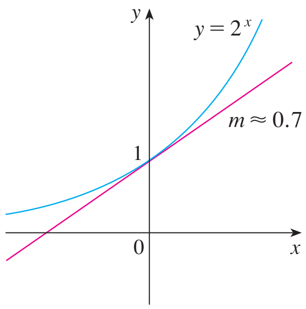


FIGURE 13

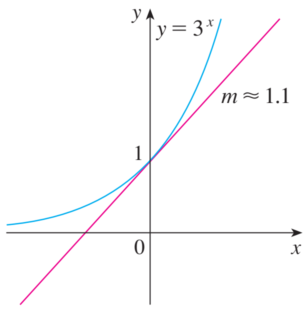


FIGURE 14

It turns out, as we will see in Chapter 3, that some of the formulas of calculus will be greatly simplified if we choose the base b so that the slope of the tangent line to $y = b^x$

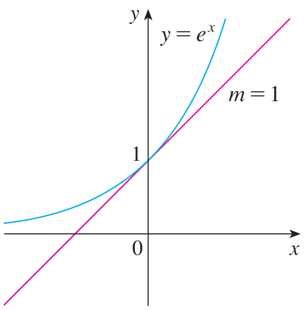


FIGURE 15
The natural exponential function crosses the y-axis with a slope of 1.

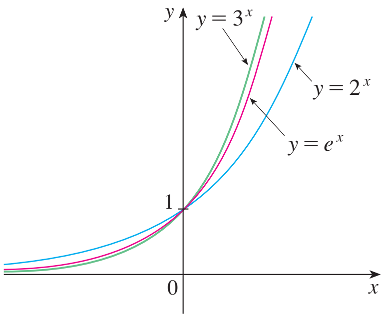
at (0, 1) is *exactly* 1. (See Figure 15.) In fact, there *is* such a number and it is denoted by the letter e. (This notation was chosen by the Swiss mathematician Leonhard Euler in 1727, probably because it is the first letter of the word *exponential*.) In view of Figures 13 and 14, it comes as no surprise that the number e lies between 2 and 3 and the graph of $y = e^x$ lies between the graphs of $y = 2^x$ and $y = 3^x$. (See Figure 16.) In Chapter 3 we will see that the value of e, correct to five decimal places, is

$$e \approx 2.71828$$

We call the function $f(x) = e^x$ the **natural exponential function**.

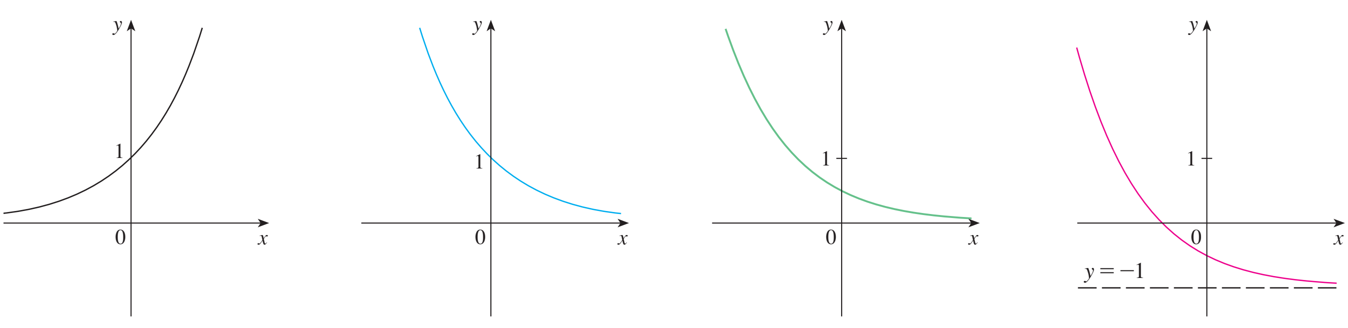
TEC Module 1.4 enables you to graph exponential functions with various bases and their tangent lines in order to estimate more closely the value of b for which the tangent has slope 1.

FIGURE 16



EXAMPLE 4 Graph the function $y = \frac{1}{2}e^{-x} - 1$ and state the domain and range.

SOLUTION We start with the graph of $y = e^x$ from Figures 15 and 17(a) and reflect about the y-axis to get the graph of $y = e^{-x}$ in Figure 17(b). (Notice that the graph crosses the y-axis with a slope of -1). Then we compress the graph vertically by a factor of 2 to obtain the graph of $y = \frac{1}{2}e^{-x}$ in Figure 17(c). Finally, we shift the graph downward one unit to get the desired graph in Figure 17(d). The domain is $\mathbb{R}$ and the range is $(-1, \infty)$.



(a) $y = e^x$ (b) $y = e^{-x}$ (c) $y = \frac{1}{2}e^{-x}$ (d) $y = \frac{1}{2}e^{-x} - 1$

FIGURE 17

■

How far to the right do you think we would have to go for the height of the graph of $y = e^x$ to exceed a million? The next example demonstrates the rapid growth of this function by providing an answer that might surprise you.

EXAMPLE 5 Use a graphing device to find the values of x for which $e^x > 1{,}000{,}000$.

SOLUTION In Figure 18 we graph both the function $y = e^x$ and the horizontal line $y = 1{,}000{,}000$. We see that these curves intersect when $x \approx 13.8$. Thus $e^x > 10^6$ when $x > 13.8$. It is perhaps surprising that the values of the exponential function have already surpassed a million when x is only 14. ■

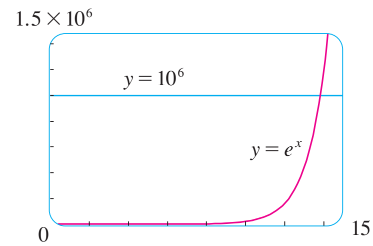


FIGURE 18

1.4 EXERCISES

1–4 Use the Law of Exponents to rewrite and simplify the expression.

1. (a) $\dfrac{4^{-3}}{2^{-8}}$ (b) $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt[3]{x^4}}$

2. (a) $8^{4/3}$ (b) $x(3x^2)^3$

3. (a) $b^8(2b)^4$ (b) $\dfrac{(6y^3)^4}{2y^5}$

4. (a) $\dfrac{x^{2n} \cdot x^{3n-1}}{x^{n+2}}$ (b) $\dfrac{\sqrt{a\sqrt{b}}}{\sqrt[3]{ab}}$

5. (a) Write an equation that defines the exponential function with base $b > 0$.
(b) What is the domain of this function?
(c) If $b \neq 1$, what is the range of this function?
(d) Sketch the general shape of the graph of the exponential function for each of the following cases.
(i) $b > 1$
(ii) $b = 1$
(iii) $0 < b < 1$

6. (a) How is the number e defined?
(b) What is an approximate value for e?
(c) What is the natural exponential function?

7–10 Graph the given functions on a common screen. How are these graphs related?

7. $y = 2^x$, $y = e^x$, $y = 5^x$, $y = 20^x$

8. $y = e^x$, $y = e^{-x}$, $y = 8^x$, $y = 8^{-x}$

9. $y = 3^x$, $y = 10^x$, $y = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^x$, $y = \left(\frac{1}{10}\right)^x$

10. $y = 0.9^x$, $y = 0.6^x$, $y = 0.3^x$, $y = 0.1^x$

11–16 Make a rough sketch of the graph of the function. Do not use a calculator. Just use the graphs given in Figures 3 and 13 and, if necessary, the transformations of Section 1.3.

11. $y = 4^x - 1$

12. $y = (0.5)^{x-1}$

13. $y = -2^{-x}$

14. $y = e^{|x|}$

15. $y = 1 - \frac{1}{2}e^{-x}$

16. $y = 2(1 - e^x)$

17. Starting with the graph of $y = e^x$, write the equation of the graph that results from
(a) shifting 2 units downward.
(b) shifting 2 units to the right.
(c) reflecting about the x-axis.
(d) reflecting about the y-axis.
(e) reflecting about the x-axis and then about the y-axis.

18. Starting with the graph of $y = e^x$, find the equation of the graph that results from
(a) reflecting about the line $y = 4$.
(b) reflecting about the line $x = 2$.

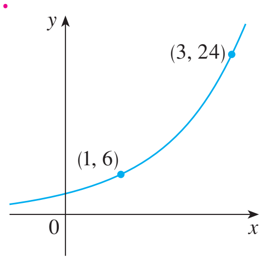
19–20 Find the domain of each function.

19. (a) $f(x) = \dfrac{1 - e^{x^2}}{1 - e^{1-x^2}}$ (b) $f(x) = \dfrac{1 + x}{e^{\cos x}}$

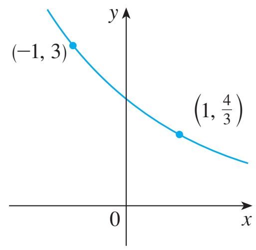
20. (a) $g(t) = \sqrt{10^t - 100}$ (b) $g(t) = \sin(e^t - 1)$

21–22 Find the exponential function $f(x) = Cb^x$ whose graph is given.

21.



22.



23. If $f(x) = 5^x$, show that

$$\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = 5^x\left(\frac{5^h - 1}{h}\right)$$

24. Suppose you are offered a job that lasts one month. Which of the following methods of payment do you prefer?

I. One million dollars at the end of the month.

II. One cent on the first day of the month, two cents on the second day, four cents on the third day, and, in general, 2^{n-1} cents on the nth day.

25. Suppose the graphs of $f(x) = x^2$ and $g(x) = 2^x$ are drawn on a coordinate grid where the unit of measurement is 1 inch. Show that, at a distance 2 ft to the right of the origin, the height of the graph of f is 48 ft but the height of the graph of g is about 265 mi.

26. Compare the functions $f(x) = x^5$ and $g(x) = 5^x$ by graphing both functions in several viewing rectangles. Find all points of intersection of the graphs correct to one decimal place. Which function grows more rapidly when x is large?

27. Compare the functions $f(x) = x^{10}$ and $g(x) = e^x$ by graphing both f and g in several viewing rectangles. When does the graph of g finally surpass the graph of f?

28. Use a graph to estimate the values of x such that $e^x > 1{,}000{,}000{,}000$.

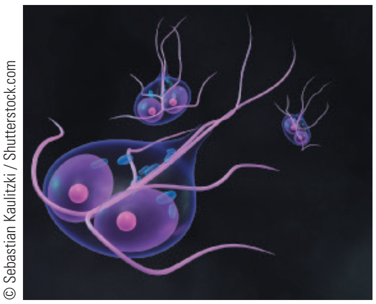
29. A researcher is trying to determine the doubling time for a population of the bacterium *Giardia lamblia*. He starts a culture in a nutrient solution and estimates the bacteria count every four hours. His data are shown in the table.

Time (hours)	0	4	8	12	16	20	24
Bacteria count (CFU/mL)	37	47	63	78	105	130	173

(a) Make a scatter plot of the data.

(b) Use a graphing calculator to find an exponential curve $f(t) = a \cdot b^t$ that models the bacteria population t hours later.

(c) Graph the model from part (b) together with the scatter plot in part (a). Use the TRACE feature to determine how long it takes for the bacteria count to double.



© Sebastian Kaulitzki / Shutterstock.com

G. lamblia

30. A bacteria culture starts with 500 bacteria and doubles in size every half hour.

(a) How many bacteria are there after 3 hours?

(b) How many bacteria are there after t hours?

(c) How many bacteria are there after 40 minutes?

(d) Graph the population function and estimate the time for the population to reach 100,000.

31. The half-life of bismuth-210, ^{210}Bi, is 5 days.

(a) If a sample has a mass of 200 mg, find the amount remaining after 15 days.

(b) Find the amount remaining after t days.

(c) Estimate the amount remaining after 3 weeks.

(d) Use a graph to estimate the time required for the mass to be reduced to 1 mg.

32. An isotope of sodium, ^{24}Na, has a half-life of 15 hours. A sample of this isotope has mass 2 g.

(a) Find the amount remaining after 60 hours.

(b) Find the amount remaining after t hours.

(c) Estimate the amount remaining after 4 days.

(d) Use a graph to estimate the time required for the mass to be reduced to 0.01 g.

33. Use the graph of V in Figure 11 to estimate the half-life of the viral load of patient 303 during the first month of treatment.

34. After alcohol is fully absorbed into the body, it is metabolized with a half-life of about 1.5 hours. Suppose you have had three alcoholic drinks and an hour later, at midnight, your blood alcohol concentration (BAC) is 0.6 mg/mL.

(a) Find an exponential decay model for your BAC t hours after midnight.

(b) Graph your BAC and use the graph to determine when you can drive home if the legal limit is 0.08 mg/mL.

Source: Adapted from P. Wilkinson et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Ethanol after Oral Administration in the Fasting State," *Journal of Pharmacokinetics and Biopharmaceutics* 5 (1977): 207–24.

35. Use a graphing calculator with exponential regression capability to model the population of the world with the data from 1950 to 2010 in Table 1 on page 49. Use the model to estimate the population in 1993 and to predict the population in the year 2020.

36. The table gives the population of the United States, in millions, for the years 1900–2010. Use a graphing calculator with exponential regression capability to model the US population since 1900. Use the model to estimate the population in 1925 and to predict the population in the year 2020.

Year	Population	Year	Population
1900	76	1960	179
1910	92	1970	203
1920	106	1980	227
1930	123	1990	250
1940	131	2000	281
1950	150	2010	310

37. If you graph the function

$$f(x) = \frac{1 - e^{1/x}}{1 + e^{1/x}}$$

you'll see that f appears to be an odd function. Prove it.

38. Graph several members of the family of functions

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{1 + ae^{bx}}$$

where $a > 0$. How does the graph change when b changes? How does it change when a changes?

1.5 Inverse Functions and Logarithms

Table 1 gives data from an experiment in which a bacteria culture started with 100 bacteria in a limited nutrient medium; the size of the bacteria population was recorded at hourly intervals. The number of bacteria N is a function of the time t: $N = f(t)$.

Suppose, however, that the biologist changes her point of view and becomes interested in the time required for the population to reach various levels. In other words, she is thinking of t as a function of N. This function is called the *inverse function* of f, denoted by f^{-1}, and read "f inverse." Thus $t = f^{-1}(N)$ is the time required for the population level to reach N. The values of f^{-1} can be found by reading Table 1 from right to left or by consulting Table 2. For instance, $f^{-1}(550) = 6$ because $f(6) = 550$.

Table 1 N as a function of t

t (hours)	$N = f(t)$ = population at time t
0	100
1	168
2	259
3	358
4	445
5	509
6	550
7	573
8	586

Table 2 t as a function of N

N	$t = f^{-1}(N)$ = time to reach N bacteria
100	0
168	1
259	2
358	3
445	4
509	5
550	6
573	7
586	8

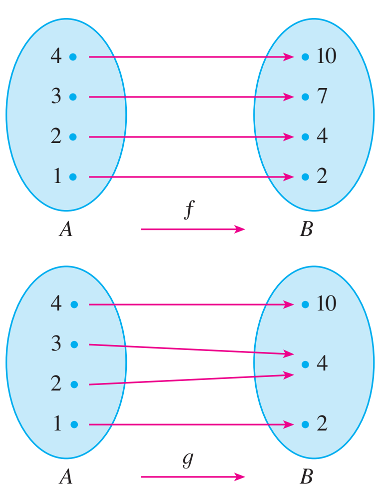


FIGURE 1
f is one-to-one; g is not.

Not all functions possess inverses. Let's compare the functions f and g whose arrow diagrams are shown in Figure 1. Note that f never takes on the same value twice (any two inputs in A have different outputs), whereas g does take on the same value twice (both 2 and 3 have the same output, 4). In symbols,

$$g(2) = g(3)$$

but $$f(x_1) \neq f(x_2) \qquad \text{whenever } x_1 \neq x_2$$

Functions that share this property with f are called *one-to-one functions*.

In the language of inputs and outputs, this definition says that f is one-to-one if each output corresponds to only one input.

1 Definition A function f is called a **one-to-one function** if it never takes on the same value twice; that is,

$$f(x_1) \neq f(x_2) \qquad \text{whenever } x_1 \neq x_2$$

If a horizontal line intersects the graph of f in more than one point, then we see from Figure 2 that there are numbers x_1 and x_2 such that $f(x_1) = f(x_2)$. This means that f is not one-to-one.

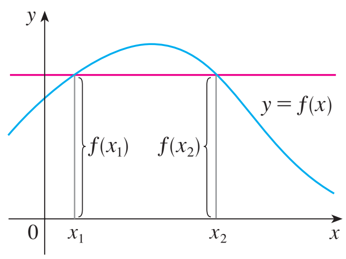


FIGURE 2
This function is not one-to-one because $f(x_1) = f(x_2)$.

Therefore we have the following geometric method for determining whether a function is one-to-one.

Horizontal Line Test A function is one-to-one if and only if no horizontal line intersects its graph more than once.

EXAMPLE 1 Is the function $f(x) = x^3$ one-to-one?

SOLUTION 1 If $x_1 \neq x_2$, then $x_1^3 \neq x_2^3$ (two different numbers can't have the same cube). Therefore, by Definition 1, $f(x) = x^3$ is one-to-one.

SOLUTION 2 From Figure 3 we see that no horizontal line intersects the graph of $f(x) = x^3$ more than once. Therefore, by the Horizontal Line Test, f is one-to-one. ■

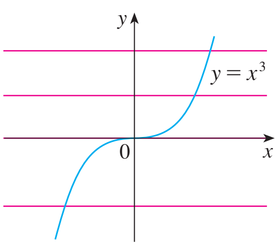


FIGURE 3
$f(x) = x^3$ is one-to-one.

EXAMPLE 2 Is the function $g(x) = x^2$ one-to-one?

SOLUTION 1 This function is not one-to-one because, for instance,

$$g(1) = 1 = g(-1)$$

and so 1 and -1 have the same output.

SOLUTION 2 From Figure 4 we see that there are horizontal lines that intersect the graph of g more than once. Therefore, by the Horizontal Line Test, g is not one-to-one. ■

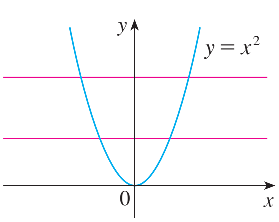


FIGURE 4
$g(x) = x^2$ is not one-to-one.

One-to-one functions are important because they are precisely the functions that possess inverse functions according to the following definition.

2 Definition Let f be a one-to-one function with domain A and range B. Then its **inverse function** f^{-1} has domain B and range A and is defined by

$$f^{-1}(y) = x \iff f(x) = y$$

for any y in B.

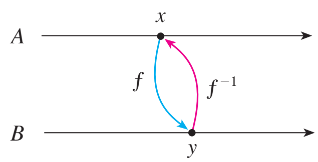


FIGURE 5

This definition says that if f maps x into y, then f^{-1} maps y back into x. (If f were not one-to-one, then f^{-1} would not be uniquely defined.) The arrow diagram in Figure 5 indicates that f^{-1} reverses the effect of f. Note that

$$\text{domain of } f^{-1} = \text{range of } f$$
$$\text{range of } f^{-1} = \text{domain of } f$$

For example, the inverse function of $f(x) = x^3$ is $f^{-1}(x) = x^{1/3}$ because if $y = x^3$, then

$$f^{-1}(y) = f^{-1}(x^3) = (x^3)^{1/3} = x$$

CAUTION Do not mistake the -1 in f^{-1} for an exponent. Thus

$$f^{-1}(x) \quad \text{does } \textit{not} \text{ mean} \quad \frac{1}{f(x)}$$

The reciprocal $1/f(x)$ could, however, be written as $[f(x)]^{-1}$.

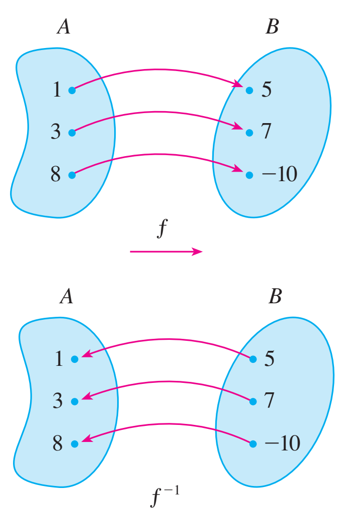


FIGURE 6
The inverse function reverses inputs and outputs.

EXAMPLE 3 If $f(1) = 5$, $f(3) = 7$, and $f(8) = -10$, find $f^{-1}(7)$, $f^{-1}(5)$, and $f^{-1}(-10)$.

SOLUTION From the definition of f^{-1} we have

$$f^{-1}(7) = 3 \qquad \text{because} \qquad f(3) = 7$$
$$f^{-1}(5) = 1 \qquad \text{because} \qquad f(1) = 5$$
$$f^{-1}(-10) = 8 \qquad \text{because} \qquad f(8) = -10$$

The diagram in Figure 6 makes it clear how f^{-1} reverses the effect of f in this case. ■

The letter x is traditionally used as the independent variable, so when we concentrate on f^{-1} rather than on f, we usually reverse the roles of x and y in Definition 2 and write

3 $$f^{-1}(x) = y \iff f(y) = x$$

By substituting for y in Definition 2 and substituting for x in (3), we get the following **cancellation equations**:

4 $$f^{-1}(f(x)) = x \quad \text{for every } x \text{ in } A$$
$$f(f^{-1}(x)) = x \quad \text{for every } x \text{ in } B$$

The first cancellation equation says that if we start with x, apply f, and then apply f^{-1}, we arrive back at x, where we started (see the machine diagram in Figure 7). Thus f^{-1} undoes what f does. The second equation says that f undoes what f^{-1} does.

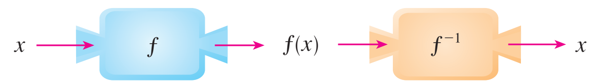


FIGURE 7

For example, if $f(x) = x^3$, then $f^{-1}(x) = x^{1/3}$ and so the cancellation equations become

$$f^{-1}(f(x)) = (x^3)^{1/3} = x$$

$$f(f^{-1}(x)) = (x^{1/3})^3 = x$$

These equations simply say that the cube function and the cube root function cancel each other when applied in succession.

Now let's see how to compute inverse functions. If we have a function $y = f(x)$ and are able to solve this equation for x in terms of y, then according to Definition 2 we must have $x = f^{-1}(y)$. If we want to call the independent variable x, we then interchange x and y and arrive at the equation $y = f^{-1}(x)$.

5 How to Find the Inverse Function of a One-to-One Function f

STEP 1 Write $y = f(x)$.

STEP 2 Solve this equation for x in terms of y (if possible).

STEP 3 To express f^{-1} as a function of x, interchange x and y. The resulting equation is $y = f^{-1}(x)$.

EXAMPLE 4 Find the inverse function of $f(x) = x^3 + 2$.

SOLUTION According to (5) we first write

$$y = x^3 + 2$$

Then we solve this equation for x:

$$x^3 = y - 2$$

$$x = \sqrt[3]{y - 2}$$

Finally, we interchange x and y:

$$y = \sqrt[3]{x - 2}$$

Therefore the inverse function is $f^{-1}(x) = \sqrt[3]{x - 2}$. ■

In Example 4, notice how f^{-1} reverses the effect of f. The function f is the rule "Cube, then add 2"; f^{-1} is the rule "Subtract 2, then take the cube root."

The principle of interchanging x and y to find the inverse function also gives us the method for obtaining the graph of f^{-1} from the graph of f. Since $f(a) = b$ if and only if $f^{-1}(b) = a$, the point (a, b) is on the graph of f if and only if the point (b, a) is on the graph of f^{-1}. But we get the point (b, a) from (a, b) by reflecting about the line $y = x$. (See Figure 8.)

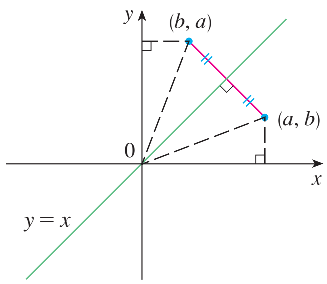


FIGURE 8

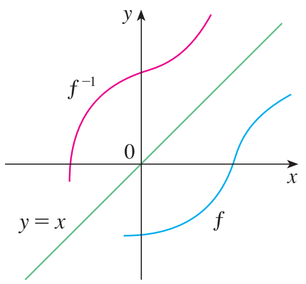


FIGURE 9

Therefore, as illustrated by Figure 9:

> The graph of f^{-1} is obtained by reflecting the graph of f about the line $y = x$.

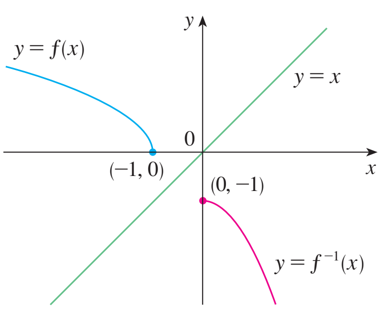


FIGURE 10

EXAMPLE 5 Sketch the graphs of $f(x) = \sqrt{-1 - x}$ and its inverse function using the same coordinate axes.

SOLUTION First we sketch the curve $y = \sqrt{-1 - x}$ (the top half of the parabola $y^2 = -1 - x$, or $x = -y^2 - 1$) and then we reflect about the line $y = x$ to get the graph of f^{-1}. (See Figure 10.) As a check on our graph, notice that the expression for f^{-1} is $f^{-1}(x) = -x^2 - 1$, $x \geqslant 0$. So the graph of f^{-1} is the right half of the parabola $y = -x^2 - 1$ and this seems reasonable from Figure 10. ■

■ Logarithmic Functions

If $b > 0$ and $b \neq 1$, the exponential function $f(x) = b^x$ is either increasing or decreasing and so it is one-to-one by the Horizontal Line Test. It therefore has an inverse function f^{-1}, which is called the **logarithmic function with base *b*** and is denoted by $\log_b$. If we use the formulation of an inverse function given by (3),

$$f^{-1}(x) = y \iff f(y) = x$$

then we have

6 $$\boxed{\log_b x = y \iff b^y = x}$$

Thus, if $x > 0$, then $\log_b x$ is the exponent to which the base b must be raised to give x. For example, $\log_{10} 0.001 = -3$ because $10^{-3} = 0.001$.

The cancellation equations (4), when applied to the functions $f(x) = b^x$ and $f^{-1}(x) = \log_b x$, become

7 $$\log_b(b^x) = x \quad \text{for every } x \in \mathbb{R}$$
$$b^{\log_b x} = x \quad \text{for every } x > 0$$

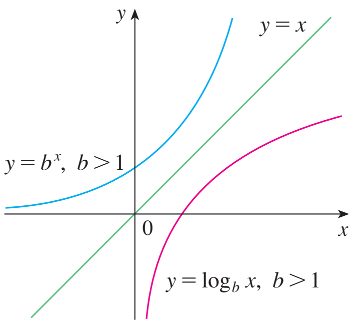


FIGURE 11

The logarithmic function $\log_b$ has domain $(0, \infty)$ and range $\mathbb{R}$. Its graph is the reflection of the graph of $y = b^x$ about the line $y = x$.

Figure 11 shows the case where $b > 1$. (The most important logarithmic functions have base $b > 1$.) The fact that $y = b^x$ is a very rapidly increasing function for $x > 0$ is reflected in the fact that $y = \log_b x$ is a very slowly increasing function for $x > 1$.

Figure 12 shows the graphs of $y = \log_b x$ with various values of the base $b > 1$. Since $\log_b 1 = 0$, the graphs of all logarithmic functions pass through the point $(1, 0)$.

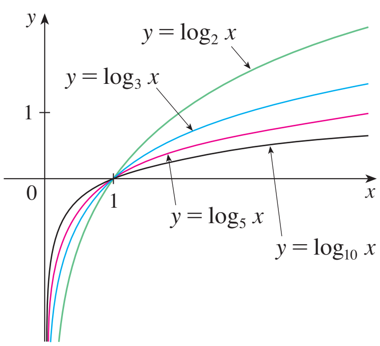


FIGURE 12

The following properties of logarithmic functions follow from the corresponding properties of exponential functions given in Section 1.4.

Laws of Logarithms If x and y are positive numbers, then

1. $\log_b(xy) = \log_b x + \log_b y$

2. $\log_b\left(\dfrac{x}{y}\right) = \log_b x - \log_b y$

3. $\log_b(x^r) = r \log_b x$ (where r is any real number)

EXAMPLE 6 Use the laws of logarithms to evaluate $\log_2 80 - \log_2 5$.

SOLUTION Using Law 2, we have

$$\log_2 80 - \log_2 5 = \log_2\left(\frac{80}{5}\right) = \log_2 16 = 4$$

because $2^4 = 16$. ■

Natural Logarithms

Of all possible bases b for logarithms, we will see in Chapter 3 that the most convenient choice of a base is the number e, which was defined in Section 1.4. The logarithm with base e is called the **natural logarithm** and has a special notation:

$$\boxed{\log_e x = \ln x}$$

If we put $b = e$ and replace $\log_e$ with "ln" in (6) and (7), then the defining properties of the natural logarithm function become

Notation for Logarithms
Most textbooks in calculus and the sciences, as well as calculators, use the notation $\ln x$ for the natural logarithm and $\log x$ for the "common logarithm," $\log_{10} x$. In the more advanced mathematical and scientific literature and in computer languages, however, the notation $\log x$ usually denotes the natural logarithm.

8
$$\boxed{\ln x = y \iff e^y = x}$$

9
$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \ln(e^x) &= x \qquad x \in \mathbb{R} \\ e^{\ln x} &= x \qquad x > 0 \end{aligned}}$$

In particular, if we set $x = 1$, we get

$$\boxed{\ln e = 1}$$

EXAMPLE 7 Find x if $\ln x = 5$.

SOLUTION 1 From (8) we see that

$$\ln x = 5 \qquad \text{means} \qquad e^5 = x$$

Therefore $x = e^5$.

(If you have trouble working with the "ln" notation, just replace it by $\log_e$. Then the equation becomes $\log_e x = 5$; so, by the definition of logarithm, $e^5 = x$.)

SOLUTION 2 Start with the equation

$$\ln x = 5$$

and apply the exponential function to both sides of the equation:

$$e^{\ln x} = e^5$$

But the second cancellation equation in (9) says that $e^{\ln x} = x$. Therefore $x = e^5$. ■

EXAMPLE 8 Solve the equation $e^{5-3x} = 10$.

SOLUTION We take natural logarithms of both sides of the equation and use (9):

$$\begin{aligned} \ln(e^{5-3x}) &= \ln 10 \\ 5 - 3x &= \ln 10 \\ 3x &= 5 - \ln 10 \\ x &= \tfrac{1}{3}(5 - \ln 10) \end{aligned}$$

Since the natural logarithm is found on scientific calculators, we can approximate the solution: to four decimal places, $x \approx 0.8991$. ■

EXAMPLE 9 Express $\ln a + \frac{1}{2}\ln b$ as a single logarithm.

SOLUTION Using Laws 3 and 1 of logarithms, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \ln a + \tfrac{1}{2}\ln b &= \ln a + \ln b^{1/2} \\ &= \ln a + \ln\sqrt{b} \\ &= \ln\left(a\sqrt{b}\right) \end{aligned}$$ ■

The following formula shows that logarithms with any base can be expressed in terms of the natural logarithm.

10 Change of Base Formula For any positive number b ($b \neq 1$), we have

$$\log_b x = \frac{\ln x}{\ln b}$$

PROOF Let $y = \log_b x$. Then, from (6), we have $b^y = x$. Taking natural logarithms of both sides of this equation, we get $y \ln b = \ln x$. Therefore

$$y = \frac{\ln x}{\ln b}$$

■

Scientific calculators have a key for natural logarithms, so Formula 10 enables us to use a calculator to compute a logarithm with any base (as shown in the following example). Similarly, Formula 10 allows us to graph any logarithmic function on a graphing calculator or computer (see Exercises 43 and 44).

EXAMPLE 10 Evaluate $\log_8 5$ correct to six decimal places.

SOLUTION Formula 10 gives

$$\log_8 5 = \frac{\ln 5}{\ln 8} \approx 0.773976$$

■

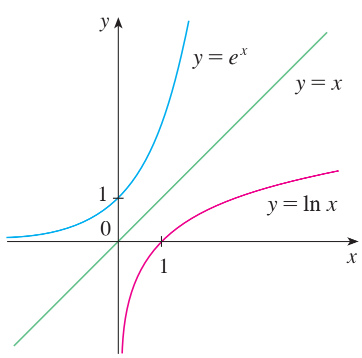


FIGURE 13
The graph of $y = \ln x$ is the reflection of the graph of $y = e^x$ about the line $y = x$.

Graph and Growth of the Natural Logarithm

The graphs of the exponential function $y = e^x$ and its inverse function, the natural logarithm function, are shown in Figure 13. Because the curve $y = e^x$ crosses the y-axis with a slope of 1, it follows that the reflected curve $y = \ln x$ crosses the x-axis with a slope of 1.

In common with all other logarithmic functions with base greater than 1, the natural logarithm is an increasing function defined on $(0, \infty)$ and the y-axis is a vertical asymptote. (This means that the values of $\ln x$ become very large negative as x approaches 0.)

EXAMPLE 11 Sketch the graph of the function $y = \ln(x - 2) - 1$.

SOLUTION We start with the graph of $y = \ln x$ as given in Figure 13. Using the transformations of Section 1.3, we shift it 2 units to the right to get the graph of $y = \ln(x - 2)$ and then we shift it 1 unit downward to get the graph of $y = \ln(x - 2) - 1$. (See Figure 14.)

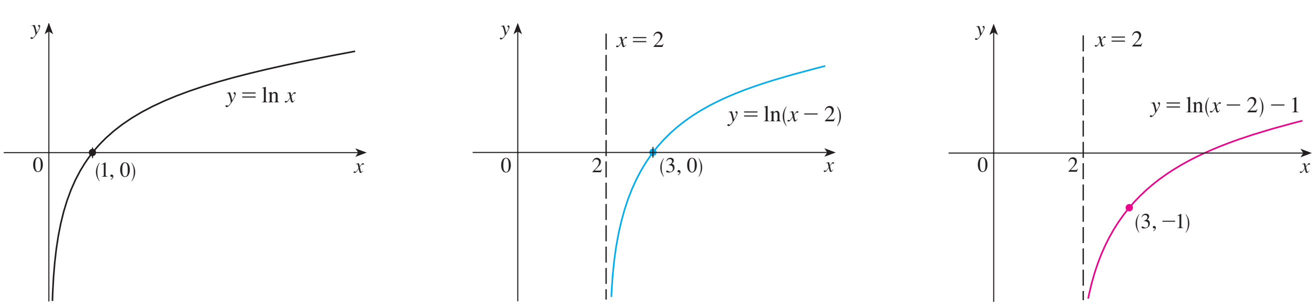


FIGURE 14

■

Although $\ln x$ is an increasing function, it grows *very* slowly when $x > 1$. In fact, $\ln x$ grows more slowly than any positive power of x. To illustrate this fact, we compare approximate values of the functions $y = \ln x$ and $y = x^{1/2} = \sqrt{x}$ in the following table and we graph them in Figures 15 and 16. You can see that initially the graphs of $y = \sqrt{x}$ and $y = \ln x$ grow at comparable rates, but eventually the root function far surpasses the logarithm.

x	1	2	5	10	50	100	500	1000	10,000	100,000
$\ln x$	0	0.69	1.61	2.30	3.91	4.6	6.2	6.9	9.2	11.5
$\sqrt{x}$	1	1.41	2.24	3.16	7.07	10.0	22.4	31.6	100	316
$\dfrac{\ln x}{\sqrt{x}}$	0	0.49	0.72	0.73	0.55	0.46	0.28	0.22	0.09	0.04

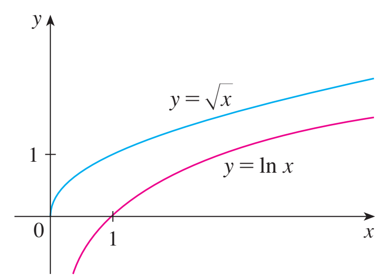


FIGURE 15

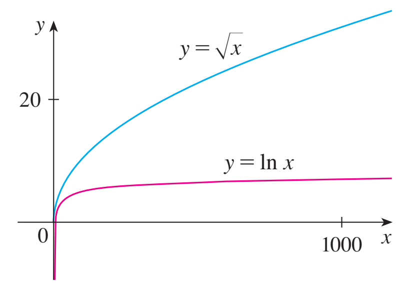


FIGURE 16

Inverse Trigonometric Functions

When we try to find the inverse trigonometric functions, we have a slight difficulty: Because the trigonometric functions are not one-to-one, they don't have inverse functions. The difficulty is overcome by restricting the domains of these functions so that they become one-to-one.

You can see from Figure 17 that the sine function $y = \sin x$ is not one-to-one (use the Horizontal Line Test). But the function $f(x) = \sin x$, $-\pi/2 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi/2$, *is* one-to-one (see Figure 18). The inverse function of this restricted sine function f exists and is denoted by $\sin^{-1}$ or arcsin. It is called the **inverse sine function** or the **arcsine function**.

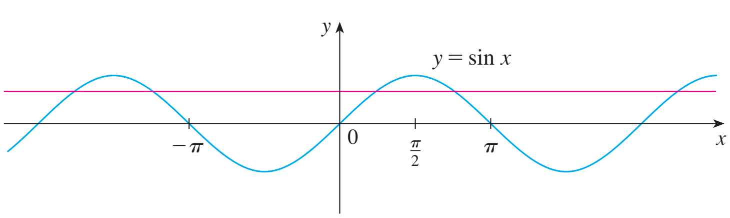


FIGURE 17

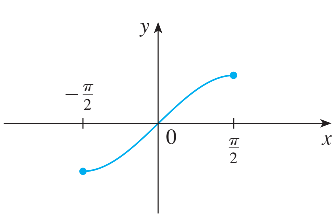


FIGURE 18
$y = \sin x,\ -\frac{\pi}{2} \leqslant x \leqslant \frac{\pi}{2}$

Since the definition of an inverse function says that

$$f^{-1}(x) = y \iff f(y) = x$$

we have

$$\boxed{\sin^{-1}x = y \iff \sin y = x \quad \text{and} \quad -\frac{\pi}{2} \leqslant y \leqslant \frac{\pi}{2}}$$

$\sin^{-1}x \neq \dfrac{1}{\sin x}$

Thus, if $-1 \leqslant x \leqslant 1$, $\sin^{-1}x$ is the number between $-\pi/2$ and $\pi/2$ whose sine is x.

EXAMPLE 12 Evaluate (a) $\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$ and (b) $\tan\left(\arcsin \frac{1}{3}\right)$.

SOLUTION

(a) We have

$$\sin^{-1}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) = \frac{\pi}{6}$$

because $\sin(\pi/6) = \frac{1}{2}$ and $\pi/6$ lies between $-\pi/2$ and $\pi/2$.

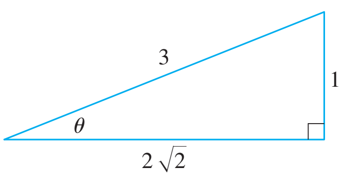


FIGURE 19

(b) Let $\theta = \arcsin \frac{1}{3}$, so $\sin \theta = \frac{1}{3}$. Then we can draw a right triangle with angle θ as in Figure 19 and deduce from the Pythagorean Theorem that the third side has length $\sqrt{9-1} = 2\sqrt{2}$. This enables us to read from the triangle that

$$\tan\left(\arcsin \tfrac{1}{3}\right) = \tan\theta = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}$$

■

The cancellation equations for inverse functions become, in this case,

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \sin^{-1}(\sin x) &= x \quad \text{for } -\frac{\pi}{2} \leqslant x \leqslant \frac{\pi}{2} \\ \sin(\sin^{-1}x) &= x \quad \text{for } -1 \leqslant x \leqslant 1 \end{aligned}}$$

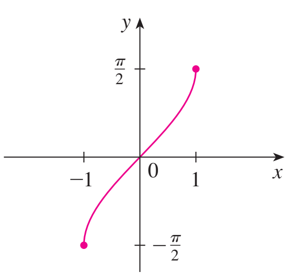


FIGURE 20
$y = \sin^{-1}x = \arcsin x$

The inverse sine function, $\sin^{-1}$, has domain $[-1, 1]$ and range $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$, and its graph, shown in Figure 20, is obtained from that of the restricted sine function (Figure 18) by reflection about the line $y = x$.

The **inverse cosine function** is handled similarly. The restricted cosine function $f(x) = \cos x$, $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$, is one-to-one (see Figure 21) and so it has an inverse function denoted by $\cos^{-1}$ or arccos.

$$\boxed{\cos^{-1}x = y \iff \cos y = x \quad \text{and} \quad 0 \leqslant y \leqslant \pi}$$

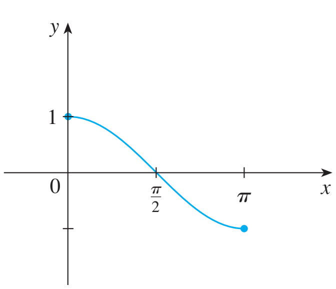


FIGURE 21
$y = \cos x$, $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$

The cancellation equations are

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \cos^{-1}(\cos x) &= x \quad \text{for } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi \\ \cos(\cos^{-1}x) &= x \quad \text{for } -1 \leqslant x \leqslant 1 \end{aligned}}$$

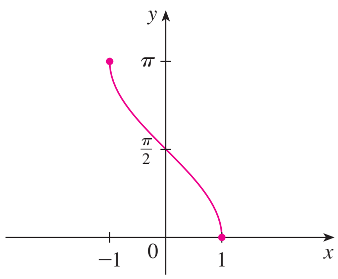


FIGURE 22
$y = \cos^{-1}x = \arccos x$

The inverse cosine function, $\cos^{-1}$, has domain $[-1, 1]$ and range $[0, \pi]$. Its graph is shown in Figure 22.

The tangent function can be made one-to-one by restricting it to the interval $(-\pi/2, \pi/2)$. Thus the **inverse tangent function** is defined as the inverse of the function $f(x) = \tan x$, $-\pi/2 < x < \pi/2$. (See Figure 23.) It is denoted by $\tan^{-1}$ or arctan.

$$\tan^{-1}x = y \iff \tan y = x \quad \text{and} \quad -\frac{\pi}{2} < y < \frac{\pi}{2}$$

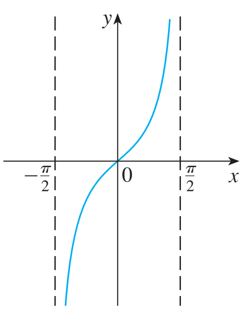


FIGURE 23
$y = \tan x$, $-\frac{\pi}{2} < x < \frac{\pi}{2}$

EXAMPLE 13 Simplify the expression $\cos(\tan^{-1}x)$.

SOLUTION 1 Let $y = \tan^{-1}x$. Then $\tan y = x$ and $-\pi/2 < y < \pi/2$. We want to find $\cos y$ but, since $\tan y$ is known, it is easier to find $\sec y$ first:

$$\sec^2 y = 1 + \tan^2 y = 1 + x^2$$

$$\sec y = \sqrt{1 + x^2} \qquad (\text{since } \sec y > 0 \text{ for } -\pi/2 < y < \pi/2)$$

Thus
$$\cos(\tan^{-1}x) = \cos y = \frac{1}{\sec y} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}}$$

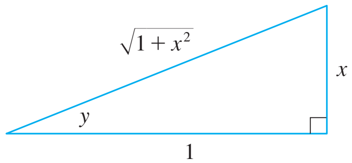


FIGURE 24

SOLUTION 2 Instead of using trigonometric identities as in Solution 1, it is perhaps easier to use a diagram. If $y = \tan^{-1}x$, then $\tan y = x$, and we can read from Figure 24 (which illustrates the case $y > 0$) that

$$\cos(\tan^{-1}x) = \cos y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}}$$ ■

The inverse tangent function, $\tan^{-1} = \arctan$, has domain $\mathbb{R}$ and range $(-\pi/2, \pi/2)$. Its graph is shown in Figure 25.

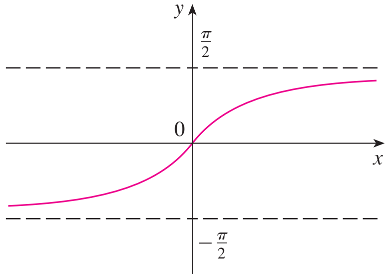


FIGURE 25
$y = \tan^{-1}x = \arctan x$

We know that the lines $x = \pm\pi/2$ are vertical asymptotes of the graph of tan. Since the graph of $\tan^{-1}$ is obtained by reflecting the graph of the restricted tangent function about the line $y = x$, it follows that the lines $y = \pi/2$ and $y = -\pi/2$ are horizontal asymptotes of the graph of $\tan^{-1}$.

The remaining inverse trigonometric functions are not used as frequently and are summarized here.

$$\boxed{11} \quad y = \csc^{-1}x \ (|x| \geqslant 1) \iff \csc y = x \quad \text{and} \quad y \in (0, \pi/2] \cup (\pi, 3\pi/2]$$

$$y = \sec^{-1}x \ (|x| \geqslant 1) \iff \sec y = x \quad \text{and} \quad y \in [0, \pi/2) \cup [\pi, 3\pi/2)$$

$$y = \cot^{-1}x \ (x \in \mathbb{R}) \iff \cot y = x \quad \text{and} \quad y \in (0, \pi)$$

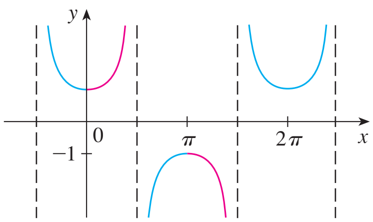


FIGURE 26
$y = \sec x$

The choice of intervals for y in the definitions of $\csc^{-1}$ and $\sec^{-1}$ is not universally agreed upon. For instance, some authors use $y \in [0, \pi/2) \cup (\pi/2, \pi]$ in the definition of $\sec^{-1}$. [You can see from the graph of the secant function in Figure 26 that both this choice and the one in (11) will work.]

1.5 EXERCISES

1. (a) What is a one-to-one function?
(b) How can you tell from the graph of a function whether it is one-to-one?

2. (a) Suppose f is a one-to-one function with domain A and range B. How is the inverse function f^{-1} defined? What is the domain of f^{-1}? What is the range of f^{-1}?
(b) If you are given a formula for f, how do you find a formula for f^{-1}?
(c) If you are given the graph of f, how do you find the graph of f^{-1}?

3–14 A function is given by a table of values, a graph, a formula, or a verbal description. Determine whether it is one-to-one.

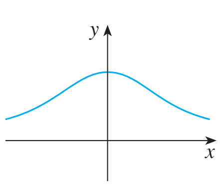
3.

x	1	2	3	4	5	6
$f(x)$	1.5	2.0	3.6	5.3	2.8	2.0

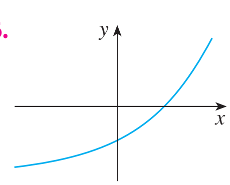
4.

x	1	2	3	4	5	6
$f(x)$	1.0	1.9	2.8	3.5	3.1	2.9

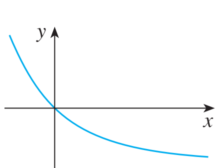
5.



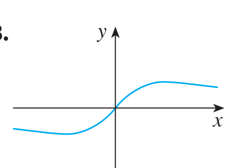
6.



7.



8.



9. $f(x) = 2x - 3$

10. $f(x) = x^4 - 16$

11. $g(x) = 1 - \sin x$

12. $g(x) = \sqrt[3]{x}$

13. $f(t)$ is the height of a football t seconds after kickoff.

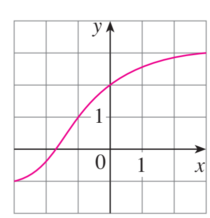
14. $f(t)$ is your height at age t.

15. Assume that f is a one-to-one function.
(a) If $f(6) = 17$, what is $f^{-1}(17)$?
(b) If $f^{-1}(3) = 2$, what is $f(2)$?

16. If $f(x) = x^5 + x^3 + x$, find $f^{-1}(3)$ and $f(f^{-1}(2))$.

17. If $g(x) = 3 + x + e^x$, find $g^{-1}(4)$.

18. The graph of f is given.
(a) Why is f one-to-one?
(b) What are the domain and range of f^{-1}?
(c) What is the value of $f^{-1}(2)$?
(d) Estimate the value of $f^{-1}(0)$.



19. The formula $C = \frac{5}{9}(F - 32)$, where $F \geqslant -459.67$, expresses the Celsius temperature C as a function of the Fahrenheit temperature F. Find a formula for the inverse function and interpret it. What is the domain of the inverse function?

20. In the theory of relativity, the mass of a particle with speed v is

$$m = f(v) = \frac{m_0}{\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}}$$

where m_0 is the rest mass of the particle and c is the speed of light in a vacuum. Find the inverse function of f and explain its meaning.

21–26 Find a formula for the inverse of the function.

21. $f(x) = 1 + \sqrt{2 + 3x}$ **22.** $f(x) = \dfrac{4x - 1}{2x + 3}$

23. $f(x) = e^{2x-1}$ **24.** $y = x^2 - x, \quad x \geqslant \frac{1}{2}$

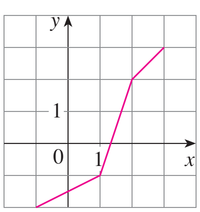
25. $y = \ln(x + 3)$ **26.** $y = \dfrac{1 - e^{-x}}{1 + e^{-x}}$

27–28 Find an explicit formula for f^{-1} and use it to graph f^{-1}, f, and the line $y = x$ on the same screen. To check your work, see whether the graphs of f and f^{-1} are reflections about the line.

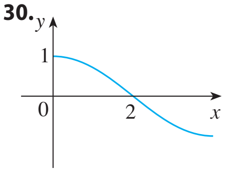
27. $f(x) = \sqrt{4x + 3}$ **28.** $f(x) = 1 + e^{-x}$

29–30 Use the given graph of f to sketch the graph of f^{-1}.

29.



30.



31. Let $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$, $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 1$.
(a) Find f^{-1}. How is it related to f?
(b) Identify the graph of f and explain your answer to part (a).

32. Let $g(x) = \sqrt[3]{1 - x^3}$.
(a) Find g^{-1}. How is it related to g?
(b) Graph g. How do you explain your answer to part (a)?

33. (a) How is the logarithmic function $y = \log_b x$ defined?
(b) What is the domain of this function?
(c) What is the range of this function?
(d) Sketch the general shape of the graph of the function $y = \log_b x$ if $b > 1$.

34. (a) What is the natural logarithm?
(b) What is the common logarithm?
(c) Sketch the graphs of the natural logarithm function and the natural exponential function with a common set of axes.

35–38 Find the exact value of each expression.

35. (a) $\log_2 32$ (b) $\log_8 2$

36. (a) $\log_5 \frac{1}{125}$ (b) $\ln(1/e^2)$

37. (a) $\log_{10} 40 + \log_{10} 2.5$
(b) $\log_8 60 - \log_8 3 - \log_8 5$

38. (a) $e^{-\ln 2}$ (b) $e^{\ln(\ln e^3)}$

39–41 Express the given quantity as a single logarithm.

39. $\ln 10 + 2 \ln 5$ **40.** $\ln b + 2 \ln c - 3 \ln d$

41. $\frac{1}{3} \ln(x + 2)^3 + \frac{1}{2} [\ln x - \ln(x^2 + 3x + 2)^2]$

42. Use Formula 10 to evaluate each logarithm correct to six decimal places.
(a) $\log_5 10$ (b) $\log_3 57$

43–44 Use Formula 10 to graph the given functions on a common screen. How are these graphs related?

43. $y = \log_{1.5} x, \quad y = \ln x, \quad y = \log_{10} x, \quad y = \log_{50} x$

44. $y = \ln x, \quad y = \log_{10} x, \quad y = e^x, \quad y = 10^x$

45. Suppose that the graph of $y = \log_2 x$ is drawn on a coordinate grid where the unit of measurement is an inch. How many miles to the right of the origin do we have to move before the height of the curve reaches 3 ft?

46. Compare the functions $f(x) = x^{0.1}$ and $g(x) = \ln x$ by graphing both f and g in several viewing rectangles. When does the graph of f finally surpass the graph of g?

47–48 Make a rough sketch of the graph of each function. Do not use a calculator. Just use the graphs given in Figures 12 and 13 and, if necessary, the transformations of Section 1.3.

47. (a) $y = \log_{10}(x + 5)$ (b) $y = -\ln x$

48. (a) $y = \ln(-x)$ (b) $y = \ln|x|$

49–50 (a) What are the domain and range of f?
(b) What is the x-intercept of the graph of f?
(c) Sketch the graph of f.

49. $f(x) = \ln x + 2$ **50.** $f(x) = \ln(x - 1) - 1$

51–54 Solve each equation for x.

51. (a) $e^{7-4x} = 6$ (b) $\ln(3x - 10) = 2$

52. (a) $\ln(x^2 - 1) = 3$ (b) $e^{2x} - 3e^x + 2 = 0$

53. (a) $2^{x-5} = 3$ (b) $\ln x + \ln(x - 1) = 1$

54. (a) $\ln(\ln x) = 1$ (b) $e^{ax} = Ce^{bx}$, where $a \neq b$

55–56 Solve each inequality for x.

55. (a) $\ln x < 0$ (b) $e^x > 5$

56. (a) $1 < e^{3x-1} < 2$ (b) $1 - 2 \ln x < 3$

57. (a) Find the domain of $f(x) = \ln(e^x - 3)$.
(b) Find f^{-1} and its domain.

58. (a) What are the values of $e^{\ln 300}$ and $\ln(e^{300})$?
(b) Use your calculator to evaluate $e^{\ln 300}$ and $\ln(e^{300})$. What do you notice? Can you explain why the calculator has trouble?

CAS **59.** Graph the function $f(x) = \sqrt{x^3 + x^2 + x + 1}$ and explain why it is one-to-one. Then use a computer algebra system to find an explicit expression for $f^{-1}(x)$. (Your CAS will produce three possible expressions. Explain why two of them are irrelevant in this context.)

CAS **60.** (a) If $g(x) = x^6 + x^4$, $x \geqslant 0$, use a computer algebra system to find an expression for $g^{-1}(x)$.
(b) Use the expression in part (a) to graph $y = g(x)$, $y = x$, and $y = g^{-1}(x)$ on the same screen.

61. If a bacteria population starts with 100 bacteria and doubles every three hours, then the number of bacteria after t hours is $n = f(t) = 100 \cdot 2^{t/3}$.
(a) Find the inverse of this function and explain its meaning.
(b) When will the population reach 50,000?

62. When a camera flash goes off, the batteries immediately begin to recharge the flash's capacitor, which stores electric charge given by
$$Q(t) = Q_0(1 - e^{-t/a})$$
(The maximum charge capacity is Q_0 and t is measured in seconds.)
(a) Find the inverse of this function and explain its meaning.
(b) How long does it take to recharge the capacitor to 90% of capacity if $a = 2$?

63–68 Find the exact value of each expression.

63. (a) $\cos^{-1}(-1)$ (b) $\sin^{-1}(0.5)$

64. (a) $\tan^{-1}\sqrt{3}$ (b) $\arctan(-1)$

65. (a) $\csc^{-1}\sqrt{2}$ (b) $\arcsin 1$

66. (a) $\sin^{-1}(-1/\sqrt{2})$ (b) $\cos^{-1}(\sqrt{3}/2)$

67. (a) $\cot^{-1}(-\sqrt{3})$ (b) $\sec^{-1} 2$

68. (a) $\arcsin(\sin(5\pi/4))$ (b) $\cos\left(2\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{5}{13}\right)\right)$

69. Prove that $\cos(\sin^{-1} x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$.

70–72 Simplify the expression.

70. $\tan(\sin^{-1}x)$ **71.** $\sin(\tan^{-1}x)$ **72.** $\sin(2\arccos x)$

73-74 Graph the given functions on the same screen. How are these graphs related?

73. $y = \sin x$, $-\pi/2 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi/2$; $y = \sin^{-1}x$; $y = x$

74. $y = \tan x$, $-\pi/2 < x < \pi/2$; $y = \tan^{-1}x$; $y = x$

75. Find the domain and range of the function
$$g(x) = \sin^{-1}(3x + 1)$$

76. (a) Graph the function $f(x) = \sin(\sin^{-1}x)$ and explain the appearance of the graph.
(b) Graph the function $g(x) = \sin^{-1}(\sin x)$. How do you explain the appearance of this graph?

77. (a) If we shift a curve to the left, what happens to its reflection about the line $y = x$? In view of this geometric principle, find an expression for the inverse of $g(x) = f(x + c)$, where f is a one-to-one function.
(b) Find an expression for the inverse of $h(x) = f(cx)$, where $c \neq 0$.

1 REVIEW

CONCEPT CHECK

Answers to the Concept Check can be found on the back endpapers.

1. (a) What is a function? What are its domain and range?
(b) What is the graph of a function?
(c) How can you tell whether a given curve is the graph of a function?

2. Discuss four ways of representing a function. Illustrate your discussion with examples.

3. (a) What is an even function? How can you tell if a function is even by looking at its graph? Give three examples of an even function.
(b) What is an odd function? How can you tell if a function is odd by looking at its graph? Give three examples of an odd function.

4. What is an increasing function?

5. What is a mathematical model?

6. Give an example of each type of function.
(a) Linear function (b) Power function
(c) Exponential function (d) Quadratic function
(e) Polynomial of degree 5 (f) Rational function

7. Sketch by hand, on the same axes, the graphs of the following functions.
(a) $f(x) = x$ (b) $g(x) = x^2$
(c) $h(x) = x^3$ (d) $j(x) = x^4$

8. Draw, by hand, a rough sketch of the graph of each function.

(a) $y = \sin x$ (b) $y = \tan x$ (c) $y = e^x$
(d) $y = \ln x$ (e) $y = 1/x$ (f) $y = |x|$
(g) $y = \sqrt{x}$ (h) $y = \tan^{-1}x$

9. Suppose that f has domain A and g has domain B.
(a) What is the domain of $f + g$?
(b) What is the domain of fg?
(c) What is the domain of f/g?

10. How is the composite function $f \circ g$ defined? What is its domain?

11. Suppose the graph of f is given. Write an equation for each of the graphs that are obtained from the graph of f as follows.
(a) Shift 2 units upward. (b) Shift 2 units downward.
(c) Shift 2 units to the right. (d) Shift 2 units to the left.
(e) Reflect about the x-axis.
(f) Reflect about the y-axis.
(g) Stretch vertically by a factor of 2.
(h) Shrink vertically by a factor of 2.
(i) Stretch horizontally by a factor of 2.
(j) Shrink horizontally by a factor of 2.

12. (a) What is a one-to-one function? How can you tell if a function is one-to-one by looking at its graph?
(b) If f is a one-to-one function, how is its inverse function f^{-1} defined? How do you obtain the graph of f^{-1} from the graph of f?

13. (a) How is the inverse sine function $f(x) = \sin^{-1}x$ defined? What are its domain and range?
(b) How is the inverse cosine function $f(x) = \cos^{-1}x$ defined? What are its domain and range?
(c) How is the inverse tangent function $f(x) = \tan^{-1}x$ defined? What are its domain and range?

TRUE-FALSE QUIZ

Determine whether the statement is true or false. If it is true, explain why. If it is false, explain why or give an example that disproves the statement.

1. If f is a function, then $f(s + t) = f(s) + f(t)$.

2. If $f(s) = f(t)$, then $s = t$.

3. If f is a function, then $f(3x) = 3f(x)$.

4. If $x_1 < x_2$ and f is a decreasing function, then $f(x_1) > f(x_2)$

5. A vertical line intersects the graph of a function at most once.

6. If f and g are functions, then $f \circ g = g \circ f$.

7. If f is one-to-one, then $f^{-1}(x) = \dfrac{1}{f(x)}$.

8. You can always divide by e^x.

9. If $0 < a < b$, then $\ln a < \ln b$.

10. If $x > 0$, then $(\ln x)^6 = 6 \ln x$.

11. If $x > 0$ and $a > 1$, then $\dfrac{\ln x}{\ln a} = \ln \dfrac{x}{a}$.

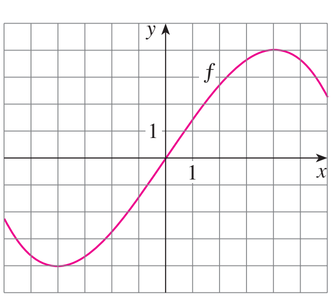
12. $\tan^{-1}(-1) = 3\pi/4$

13. $\tan^{-1}x = \dfrac{\sin^{-1}x}{\cos^{-1}x}$

14. If x is any real number, then $\sqrt{x^2} = x$.

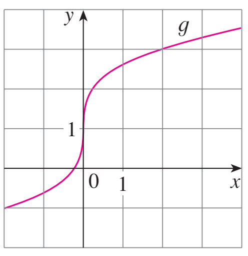
EXERCISES

1. Let f be the function whose graph is given.



(a) Estimate the value of $f(2)$.
(b) Estimate the values of x such that $f(x) = 3$.
(c) State the domain of f.
(d) State the range of f.
(e) On what interval is f increasing?
(f) Is f one-to-one? Explain.
(g) Is f even, odd, or neither even nor odd? Explain.

2. The graph of g is given.



(a) State the value of $g(2)$.
(b) Why is g one-to-one?
(c) Estimate the value of $g^{-1}(2)$.
(d) Estimate the domain of g^{-1}.
(e) Sketch the graph of g^{-1}.

3. If $f(x) = x^2 - 2x + 3$, evaluate the difference quotient
$$\frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}$$

4. Sketch a rough graph of the yield of a crop as a function of the amount of fertilizer used.

5–8 Find the domain and range of the function. Write your answer in interval notation.

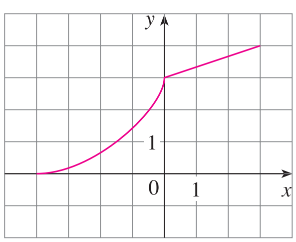
5. $f(x) = 2/(3x - 1)$ **6.** $g(x) = \sqrt{16 - x^4}$

7. $h(x) = \ln(x + 6)$ **8.** $F(t) = 3 + \cos 2t$

---

9. Suppose that the graph of f is given. Describe how the graphs of the following functions can be obtained from the graph of f.
(a) $y = f(x) + 8$ (b) $y = f(x + 8)$
(c) $y = 1 + 2f(x)$ (d) $y = f(x - 2) - 2$
(e) $y = -f(x)$ (f) $y = f^{-1}(x)$

10. The graph of f is given. Draw the graphs of the following functions.
(a) $y = f(x - 8)$ (b) $y = -f(x)$
(c) $y = 2 - f(x)$ (d) $y = \frac{1}{2}f(x) - 1$
(e) $y = f^{-1}(x)$ (f) $y = f^{-1}(x + 3)$



11–16 Use transformations to sketch the graph of the function.

11. $y = (x - 2)^3$ **12.** $y = 2\sqrt{x}$

13. $y = x^2 - 2x + 2$ **14.** $y = \ln(x + 1)$

15. $f(x) = -\cos 2x$ **16.** $f(x) = \begin{cases} -x & \text{if } x < 0 \\ e^x - 1 & \text{if } x \geqslant 0 \end{cases}$

---

17. Determine whether f is even, odd, or neither even nor odd.
(a) $f(x) = 2x^5 - 3x^2 + 2$
(b) $f(x) = x^3 - x^7$
(c) $f(x) = e^{-x^2}$ (d) $f(x) = 1 + \sin x$

18. Find an expression for the function whose graph consists of the line segment from the point $(-2, 2)$ to the point $(-1, 0)$ together with the top half of the circle with center the origin and radius 1.

19. If $f(x) = \ln x$ and $g(x) = x^2 - 9$, find the functions (a) $f \circ g$, (b) $g \circ f$, (c) $f \circ f$, (d) $g \circ g$, and their domains.

20. Express the function $F(x) = 1/\sqrt{x + \sqrt{x}}$ as a composition of three functions.

21. Life expectancy improved dramatically in the 20th century. The table gives the life expectancy at birth (in years) of males born in the United States. Use a scatter plot to choose an appropriate type of model. Use your model to predict the life span of a male born in the year 2010.

Birth year	Life expectancy	Birth year	Life expectancy
1900	48.3	1960	66.6
1910	51.1	1970	67.1
1920	55.2	1980	70.0
1930	57.4	1990	71.8
1940	62.5	2000	73.0
1950	65.6		

22. A small-appliance manufacturer finds that it costs \$9000 to produce 1000 toaster ovens a week and \$12,000 to produce 1500 toaster ovens a week.
(a) Express the cost as a function of the number of toaster ovens produced, assuming that it is linear. Then sketch the graph.
(b) What is the slope of the graph and what does it represent?
(c) What is the y-intercept of the graph and what does it represent?

23. If $f(x) = 2x + \ln x$, find $f^{-1}(2)$.

24. Find the inverse function of $f(x) = \dfrac{x + 1}{2x + 1}$.

25. Find the exact value of each expression.
(a) $e^{2\ln 3}$ (b) $\log_{10} 25 + \log_{10} 4$
(c) $\tan\left(\arcsin \frac{1}{2}\right)$ (d) $\sin\left(\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)\right)$

26. Solve each equation for x.
(a) $e^x = 5$ (b) $\ln x = 2$
(c) $e^{e^x} = 2$ (d) $\tan^{-1}x = 1$

27. The half-life of palladium-100, ^{100}Pd, is four days. (So half of any given quantity of ^{100}Pd will disintegrate in four days.) The initial mass of a sample is one gram.
(a) Find the mass that remains after 16 days.
(b) Find the mass $m(t)$ that remains after t days.
(c) Find the inverse of this function and explain its meaning.
(d) When will the mass be reduced to 0.01g?

28. The population of a certain species in a limited environment with initial population 100 and carrying capacity 1000 is
$$P(t) = \frac{100{,}000}{100 + 900e^{-t}}$$
where t is measured in years.
(a) Graph this function and estimate how long it takes for the population to reach 900.
(b) Find the inverse of this function and explain its meaning.
(c) Use the inverse function to find the time required for the population to reach 900. Compare with the result of part (a).

Principles of Problem Solving

There are no hard and fast rules that will ensure success in solving problems. However, it is possible to outline some general steps in the problem-solving process and to give some principles that may be useful in the solution of certain problems. These steps and principles are just common sense made explicit. They have been adapted from George Polya's book *How To Solve It*.

1 UNDERSTAND THE PROBLEM

The first step is to read the problem and make sure that you understand it clearly. Ask yourself the following questions:

What is the unknown?

What are the given quantities?

What are the given conditions?

For many problems it is useful to

draw a diagram

and identify the given and required quantities on the diagram.

Usually it is necessary to

introduce suitable notation

In choosing symbols for the unknown quantities we often use letters such as a, b, c, m, n, x, and y, but in some cases it helps to use initials as suggestive symbols; for instance, V for volume or t for time.

2 THINK OF A PLAN

Find a connection between the given information and the unknown that will enable you to calculate the unknown. It often helps to ask yourself explicitly: "How can I relate the given to the unknown?" If you don't see a connection immediately, the following ideas may be helpful in devising a plan.

Try to Recognize Something Familiar Relate the given situation to previous knowledge. Look at the unknown and try to recall a more familiar problem that has a similar unknown.

Try to Recognize Patterns Some problems are solved by recognizing that some kind of pattern is occurring. The pattern could be geometric, or numerical, or algebraic. If you can see regularity or repetition in a problem, you might be able to guess what the continuing pattern is and then prove it.

Use Analogy Try to think of an analogous problem, that is, a similar problem, a related problem, but one that is easier than the original problem. If you can solve the similar, simpler problem, then it might give you the clues you need to solve the original, more difficult problem. For instance, if a problem involves very large numbers, you could first try a similar problem with smaller numbers. Or if the problem involves three-dimensional geometry, you could look for a similar problem in two-dimensional geometry. Or if the problem you start with is a general one, you could first try a special case.

Introduce Something Extra It may sometimes be necessary to introduce something new, an auxiliary aid, to help make the connection between the given and the unknown. For instance, in a problem where a diagram is useful the auxiliary aid could be a new line drawn in a diagram. In a more algebraic problem it could be a new unknown that is related to the original unknown.

Take Cases We may sometimes have to split a problem into several cases and give a different argument for each of the cases. For instance, we often have to use this strategy in dealing with absolute value.

Work Backward Sometimes it is useful to imagine that your problem is solved and work backward, step by step, until you arrive at the given data. Then you may be able to reverse your steps and thereby construct a solution to the original problem. This procedure is commonly used in solving equations. For instance, in solving the equation $3x - 5 = 7$, we suppose that x is a number that satisfies $3x - 5 = 7$ and work backward. We add 5 to each side of the equation and then divide each side by 3 to get $x = 4$. Since each of these steps can be reversed, we have solved the problem.

Establish Subgoals In a complex problem it is often useful to set subgoals (in which the desired situation is only partially fulfilled). If we can first reach these subgoals, then we may be able to build on them to reach our final goal.

Indirect Reasoning Sometimes it is appropriate to attack a problem indirectly. In using proof by contradiction to prove that P implies Q, we assume that P is true and Q is false and try to see why this can't happen. Somehow we have to use this information and arrive at a contradiction to what we absolutely know is true.

Mathematical Induction In proving statements that involve a positive integer n, it is frequently helpful to use the following principle.

> **Principle of Mathematical Induction** Let S_n be a statement about the positive integer n. Suppose that
>
> **1.** S_1 is true.
>
> **2.** S_{k+1} is true whenever S_k is true.
>
> Then S_n is true for all positive integers n.

This is reasonable because, since S_1 is true, it follows from condition 2 (with $k = 1$) that S_2 is true. Then, using condition 2 with $k = 2$, we see that S_3 is true. Again using condition 2, this time with $k = 3$, we have that S_4 is true. This procedure can be followed indefinitely.

3 CARRY OUT THE PLAN

In Step 2 a plan was devised. In carrying out that plan we have to check each stage of the plan and write the details that prove that each stage is correct.

4 LOOK BACK

Having completed our solution, it is wise to look back over it, partly to see if we have made errors in the solution and partly to see if we can think of an easier way to solve the problem. Another reason for looking back is that it will familiarize us with the method of solution and this may be useful for solving a future problem. Descartes said, "Every problem that I solved became a rule which served afterwards to solve other problems."

These principles of problem solving are illustrated in the following examples. Before you look at the solutions, try to solve these problems yourself, referring to these Principles of Problem Solving if you get stuck. You may find it useful to refer to this section from time to time as you solve the exercises in the remaining chapters of this book.

EXAMPLE 1 Express the hypotenuse h of a right triangle with area 25 m^2 as a function of its perimeter P.

PS Understand the problem

SOLUTION Let's first sort out the information by identifying the unknown quantity and the data:

Unknown: hypotenuse h

Given quantities: perimeter P, area 25 m^2

PS Draw a diagram

It helps to draw a diagram and we do so in Figure 1.

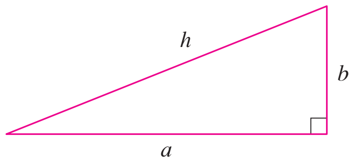


FIGURE 1

PS Connect the given with the unknown

PS Introduce something extra

In order to connect the given quantities to the unknown, we introduce two extra variables a and b, which are the lengths of the other two sides of the triangle. This enables us to express the given condition, which is that the triangle is right-angled, by the Pythagorean Theorem:

$$h^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

The other connections among the variables come by writing expressions for the area and perimeter:

$$25 = \tfrac{1}{2}ab \qquad P = a + b + h$$

Since P is given, notice that we now have three equations in the three unknowns a, b, and h:

$$\boxed{1} \qquad h^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

$$\boxed{2} \qquad 25 = \tfrac{1}{2}ab$$

$$\boxed{3} \qquad P = a + b + h$$

PS Relate to the familiar

Although we have the correct number of equations, they are not easy to solve in a straightforward fashion. But if we use the problem-solving strategy of trying to recognize something familiar, then we can solve these equations by an easier method. Look at the right sides of Equations 1, 2, and 3. Do these expressions remind you of anything familiar? Notice that they contain the ingredients of a familiar formula:

$$(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$$

Using this idea, we express $(a + b)^2$ in two ways. From Equations 1 and 2 we have

$$(a + b)^2 = (a^2 + b^2) + 2ab = h^2 + 4(25)$$

From Equation 3 we have

$$(a + b)^2 = (P - h)^2 = P^2 - 2Ph + h^2$$

Thus

$$h^2 + 100 = P^2 - 2Ph + h^2$$

$$2Ph = P^2 - 100$$

$$h = \frac{P^2 - 100}{2P}$$

This is the required expression for h as a function of P. ■

As the next example illustrates, it is often necessary to use the problem-solving principle of *taking cases* when dealing with absolute values.

EXAMPLE 2 Solve the inequality $|x - 3| + |x + 2| < 11$.

SOLUTION Recall the definition of absolute value:

$$|x| = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \geqslant 0 \\ -x & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

It follows that

$$|x - 3| = \begin{cases} x - 3 & \text{if } x - 3 \geqslant 0 \\ -(x - 3) & \text{if } x - 3 < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$= \begin{cases} x - 3 & \text{if } x \geqslant 3 \\ -x + 3 & \text{if } x < 3 \end{cases}$$

Similarly

$$|x + 2| = \begin{cases} x + 2 & \text{if } x + 2 \geqslant 0 \\ -(x + 2) & \text{if } x + 2 < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$= \begin{cases} x + 2 & \text{if } x \geqslant -2 \\ -x - 2 & \text{if } x < -2 \end{cases}$$

PS Take cases

These expressions show that we must consider three cases:

$$x < -2 \qquad -2 \leqslant x < 3 \qquad x \geqslant 3$$

CASE I If $x < -2$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} |x - 3| + |x + 2| &< 11 \\ -x + 3 - x - 2 &< 11 \\ -2x &< 10 \\ x &> -5 \end{aligned}$$

CASE II If $-2 \leqslant x < 3$, the given inequality becomes

$$\begin{aligned} -x + 3 + x + 2 &< 11 \\ 5 &< 11 \qquad \text{(always true)} \end{aligned}$$

CASE III If $x \geqslant 3$, the inequality becomes

$$\begin{aligned} x - 3 + x + 2 &< 11 \\ 2x &< 12 \\ x &< 6 \end{aligned}$$

Combining cases I, II, and III, we see that the inequality is satisfied when $-5 < x < 6$. So the solution is the interval $(-5, 6)$. ■

In the following example we first guess the answer by looking at special cases and recognizing a pattern. Then we prove our conjecture by mathematical induction.

In using the Principle of Mathematical Induction, we follow three steps:

Step 1 Prove that S_n is true when $n = 1$.

Step 2 Assume that S_n is true when $n = k$ and deduce that S_n is true when $n = k + 1$.

Step 3 Conclude that S_n is true for all n by the Principle of Mathematical Induction.

EXAMPLE 3 If $f_0(x) = x/(x + 1)$ and $f_{n+1} = f_0 \circ f_n$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, find a formula for $f_n(x)$.

PS Analogy: Try a similar, simpler problem

SOLUTION We start by finding formulas for $f_n(x)$ for the special cases $n = 1, 2$, and 3.

$$f_1(x) = (f_0 \circ f_0)(x) = f_0\big(f_0(x)\big) = f_0\left(\frac{x}{x+1}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\dfrac{x}{x+1}}{\dfrac{x}{x+1} + 1} = \frac{\dfrac{x}{x+1}}{\dfrac{2x+1}{x+1}} = \frac{x}{2x+1}$$

$$f_2(x) = (f_0 \circ f_1)(x) = f_0\big(f_1(x)\big) = f_0\left(\frac{x}{2x+1}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\dfrac{x}{2x+1}}{\dfrac{x}{2x+1} + 1} = \frac{\dfrac{x}{2x+1}}{\dfrac{3x+1}{2x+1}} = \frac{x}{3x+1}$$

$$f_3(x) = (f_0 \circ f_2)(x) = f_0\big(f_2(x)\big) = f_0\left(\frac{x}{3x+1}\right)$$

PS Look for a pattern

$$= \frac{\dfrac{x}{3x+1}}{\dfrac{x}{3x+1} + 1} = \frac{\dfrac{x}{3x+1}}{\dfrac{4x+1}{3x+1}} = \frac{x}{4x+1}$$

We notice a pattern: The coefficient of x in the denominator of $f_n(x)$ is $n + 1$ in the three cases we have computed. So we make the guess that, in general,

$$\boxed{4} \qquad f_n(x) = \frac{x}{(n+1)x + 1}$$

To prove this, we use the Principle of Mathematical Induction. We have already verified that (4) is true for $n = 1$. Assume that it is true for $n = k$, that is,

$$f_k(x) = \frac{x}{(k+1)x + 1}$$

Then $$f_{k+1}(x) = (f_0 \circ f_k)(x) = f_0\big(f_k(x)\big) = f_0\left(\frac{x}{(k+1)x+1}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\dfrac{x}{(k+1)x+1}}{\dfrac{x}{(k+1)x+1} + 1} = \frac{\dfrac{x}{(k+1)x+1}}{\dfrac{(k+2)x+1}{(k+1)x+1}} = \frac{x}{(k+2)x+1}$$

This expression shows that (4) is true for $n = k + 1$. Therefore, by mathematical induction, it is true for all positive integers n. ■

Problems

1. One of the legs of a right triangle has length 4 cm. Express the length of the altitude perpendicular to the hypotenuse as a function of the length of the hypotenuse.

2. The altitude perpendicular to the hypotenuse of a right triangle is 12 cm. Express the length of the hypotenuse as a function of the perimeter.

3. Solve the equation $|2x - 1| - |x + 5| = 3$.

4. Solve the inequality $|x - 1| - |x - 3| \geqslant 5$.

5. Sketch the graph of the function $f(x) = |x^2 - 4|x| + 3|$.

6. Sketch the graph of the function $g(x) = |x^2 - 1| - |x^2 - 4|$.

7. Draw the graph of the equation $x + |x| = y + |y|$.

8. Sketch the region in the plane consisting of all points (x, y) such that

$$|x - y| + |x| - |y| \leqslant 2$$

9. The notation $\max\{a, b, \ldots\}$ means the largest of the numbers $a, b, \ldots$. Sketch the graph of each function.

(a) $f(x) = \max\{x, 1/x\}$

(b) $f(x) = \max\{\sin x, \cos x\}$

(c) $f(x) = \max\{x^2, 2 + x, 2 - x\}$

10. Sketch the region in the plane defined by each of the following equations or inequalities.

(a) $\max\{x, 2y\} = 1$

(b) $-1 \leqslant \max\{x, 2y\} \leqslant 1$

(c) $\max\{x, y^2\} = 1$

11. Evaluate $(\log_2 3)(\log_3 4)(\log_4 5)\cdots(\log_{31} 32)$.

12. (a) Show that the function $f(x) = \ln\left(x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1}\right)$ is an odd function.

(b) Find the inverse function of f.

13. Solve the inequality $\ln(x^2 - 2x - 2) \leqslant 0$.

14. Use indirect reasoning to prove that $\log_2 5$ is an irrational number.

15. A driver sets out on a journey. For the first half of the distance she drives at the leisurely pace of 30 mi/h; she drives the second half at 60 mi/h. What is her average speed on this trip?

16. Is it true that $f \circ (g + h) = f \circ g + f \circ h$?

17. Prove that if n is a positive integer, then $7^n - 1$ is divisible by 6.

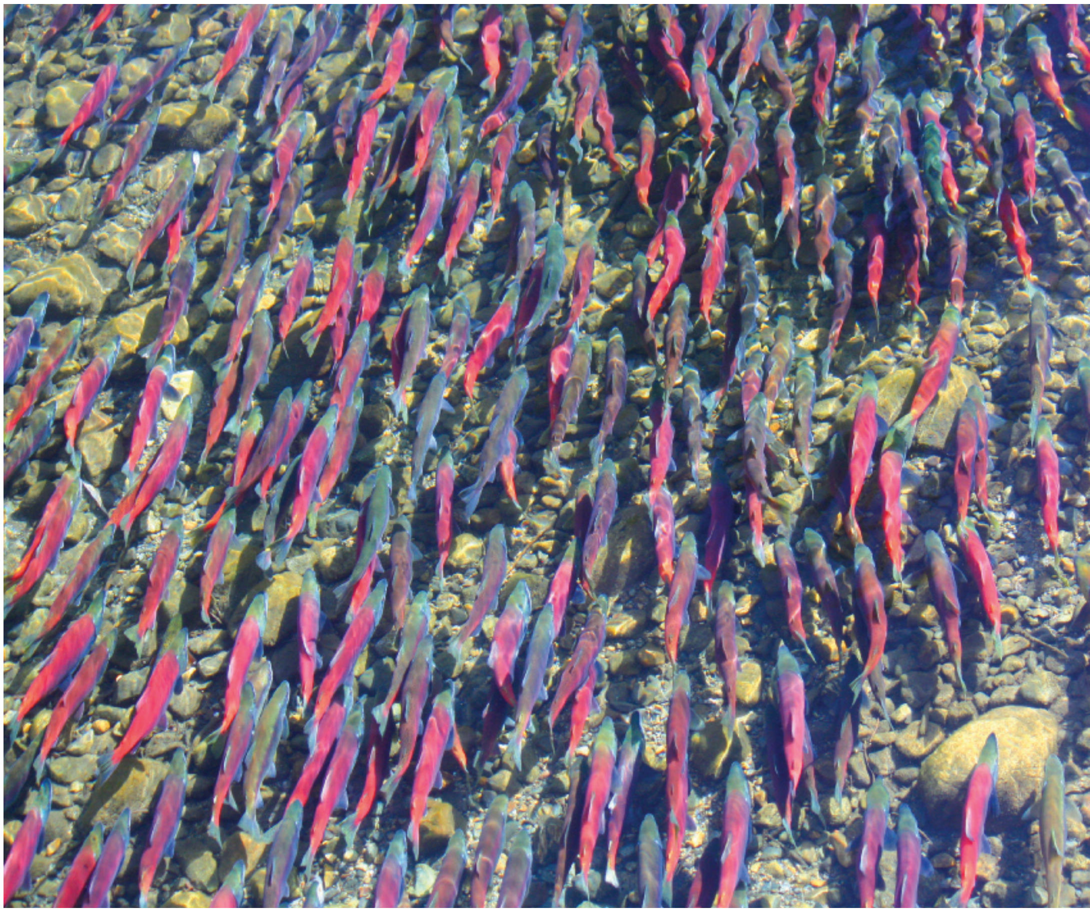
18. Prove that $1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2n - 1) = n^2$.

19. If $f_0(x) = x^2$ and $f_{n+1}(x) = f_0(f_n(x))$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, find a formula for $f_n(x)$.

20. (a) If $f_0(x) = \dfrac{1}{2 - x}$ and $f_{n+1} = f_0 \circ f_n$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, find an expression for $f_n(x)$ and use mathematical induction to prove it.

(b) Graph f_0, f_1, f_2, f_3 on the same screen and describe the effects of repeated composition.

2 Limits and Derivatives



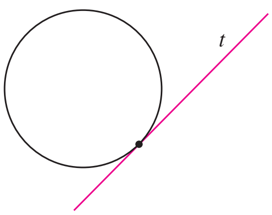
© Jody Ann / Shutterstock.com

The maximum sustainable swimming speed *S* of salmon depends on the water temperature *T*. Exercise 58 in Section 2.7 asks you to analyze how *S* varies as *T* changes by estimating the derivative of *S* with respect to *T*.

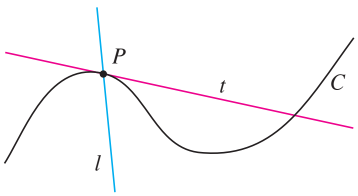
IN *A PREVIEW OF CALCULUS* (page 1) we saw how the idea of a limit underlies the various branches of calculus. It is therefore appropriate to begin our study of calculus by investigating limits and their properties. The special type of limit that is used to find tangents and velocities gives rise to the central idea in differential calculus, the derivative.

2.1 The Tangent and Velocity Problems

In this section we see how limits arise when we attempt to find the tangent to a curve or the velocity of an object.



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 1

The Tangent Problem

The word *tangent* is derived from the Latin word *tangens*, which means "touching." Thus a tangent to a curve is a line that touches the curve. In other words, a tangent line should have the same direction as the curve at the point of contact. How can this idea be made precise?

For a circle we could simply follow Euclid and say that a tangent is a line that intersects the circle once and only once, as in Figure 1(a). For more complicated curves this definition is inadequate. Figure 1(b) shows two lines l and t passing through a point P on a curve C. The line l intersects C only once, but it certainly does not look like what we think of as a tangent. The line t, on the other hand, looks like a tangent but it intersects C twice.

To be specific, let's look at the problem of trying to find a tangent line t to the parabola $y = x^2$ in the following example.

EXAMPLE 1 Find an equation of the tangent line to the parabola $y = x^2$ at the point $P(1, 1)$.

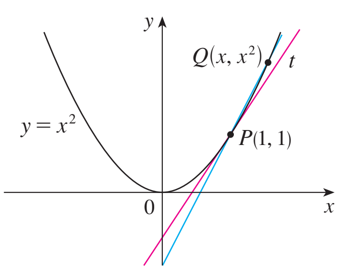


FIGURE 2

SOLUTION We will be able to find an equation of the tangent line t as soon as we know its slope m. The difficulty is that we know only one point, P, on t, whereas we need two points to compute the slope. But observe that we can compute an approximation to m by choosing a nearby point $Q(x, x^2)$ on the parabola (as in Figure 2) and computing the slope m_{PQ} of the secant line PQ. [A **secant line**, from the Latin word *secans*, meaning cutting, is a line that cuts (intersects) a curve more than once.]

We choose $x \neq 1$ so that $Q \neq P$. Then

$$m_{PQ} = \frac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1}$$

For instance, for the point $Q(1.5, 2.25)$ we have

$$m_{PQ} = \frac{2.25 - 1}{1.5 - 1} = \frac{1.25}{0.5} = 2.5$$

x	m_{PQ}
2	3
1.5	2.5
1.1	2.1
1.01	2.01
1.001	2.001

x	m_{PQ}
0	1
0.5	1.5
0.9	1.9
0.99	1.99
0.999	1.999

The tables in the margin show the values of m_{PQ} for several values of x close to 1. The closer Q is to P, the closer x is to 1 and, it appears from the tables, the closer m_{PQ} is to 2. This suggests that the slope of the tangent line t should be $m = 2$.

We say that the slope of the tangent line is the *limit* of the slopes of the secant lines, and we express this symbolically by writing

$$\lim_{Q \to P} m_{PQ} = m \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to 1} \frac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1} = 2$$

Assuming that the slope of the tangent line is indeed 2, we use the point-slope form of the equation of a line [$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$, see Appendix B] to write the equation of the tangent line through $(1, 1)$ as

$$y - 1 = 2(x - 1) \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = 2x - 1$$

Figure 3 illustrates the limiting process that occurs in this example. As Q approaches P along the parabola, the corresponding secant lines rotate about P and approach the tangent line t.

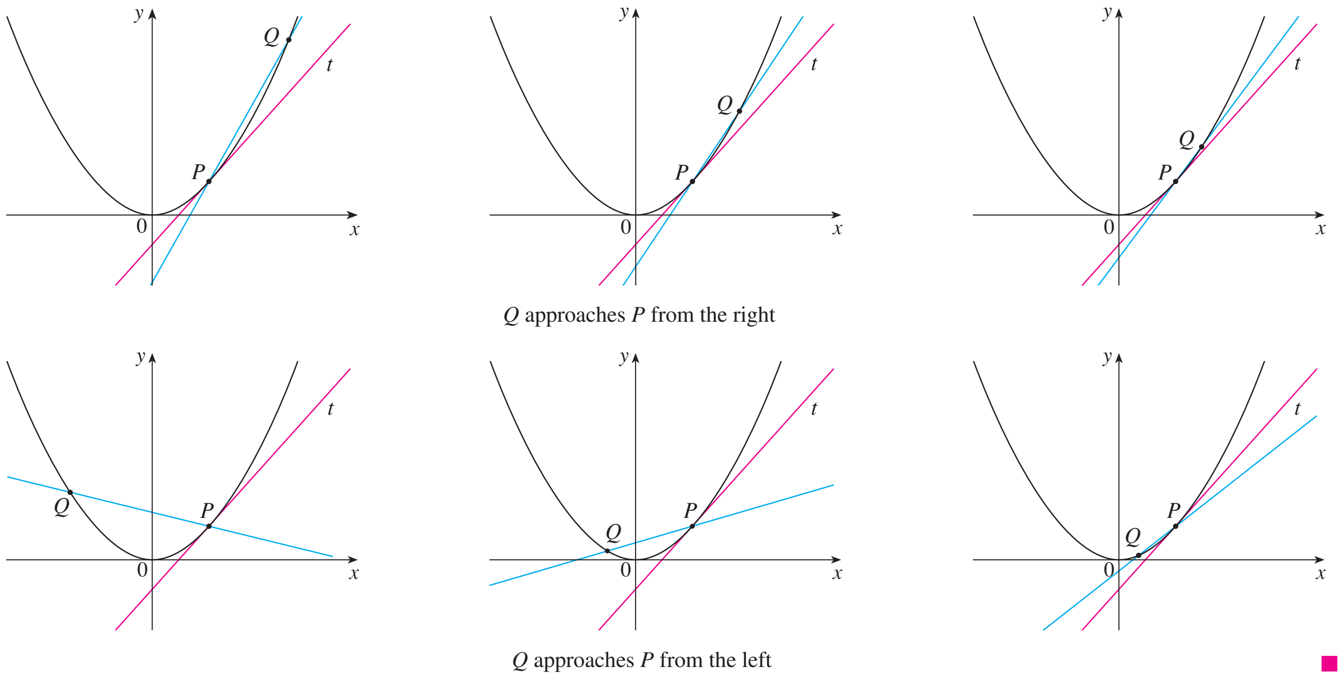


FIGURE 3

TEC In Visual 2.1 you can see how the process in Figure 3 works for additional functions.

Many functions that occur in science are not described by explicit equations; they are defined by experimental data. The next example shows how to estimate the slope of the tangent line to the graph of such a function.

EXAMPLE 2 The flash unit on a camera operates by storing charge on a capacitor and releasing it suddenly when the flash is set off. The data in the table describe the charge Q remaining on the capacitor (measured in microcoulombs) at time t (measured in seconds after the flash goes off). Use the data to draw the graph of this function and estimate the slope of the tangent line at the point where $t = 0.04$. [*Note:* The slope of the tangent line represents the electric current flowing from the capacitor to the flash bulb (measured in microamperes).]

t	Q
0.00	100.00
0.02	81.87
0.04	67.03
0.06	54.88
0.08	44.93
0.10	36.76

SOLUTION In Figure 4 we plot the given data and use them to sketch a curve that approximates the graph of the function.

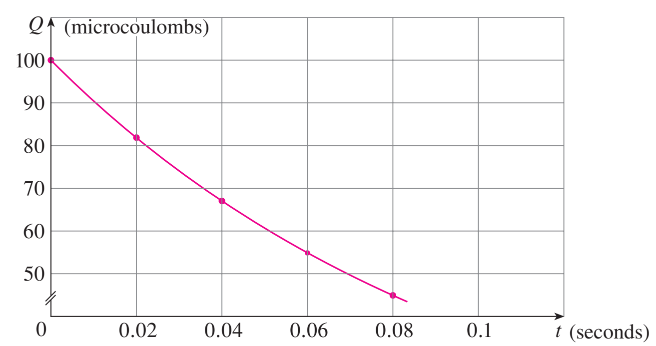


FIGURE 4

Given the points $P(0.04, 67.03)$ and $R(0.00, 100.00)$ on the graph, we find that the slope of the secant line PR is

$$m_{PR} = \frac{100.00 - 67.03}{0.00 - 0.04} = -824.25$$

R	m_{PR}
(0.00, 100.00)	−824.25
(0.02, 81.87)	−742.00
(0.06, 54.88)	−607.50
(0.08, 44.93)	−552.50
(0.10, 36.76)	−504.50

The table at the left shows the results of similar calculations for the slopes of other secant lines. From this table we would expect the slope of the tangent line at $t = 0.04$ to lie somewhere between -742 and -607.5. In fact, the average of the slopes of the two closest secant lines is

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(-742 - 607.5) = -674.75$$

So, by this method, we estimate the slope of the tangent line to be about -675.

Another method is to draw an approximation to the tangent line at P and measure the sides of the triangle ABC, as in Figure 5.

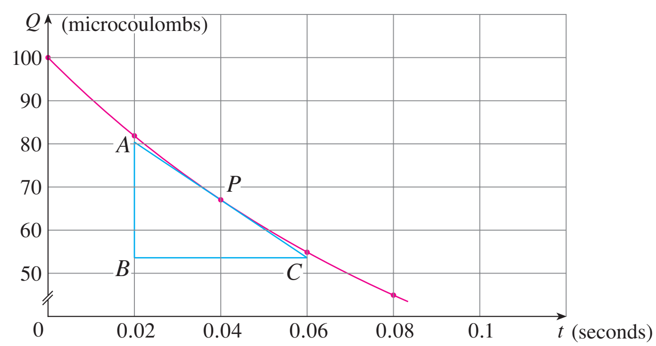


FIGURE 5

This gives an estimate of the slope of the tangent line as

$$-\frac{|AB|}{|BC|} \approx -\frac{80.4 - 53.6}{0.06 - 0.02} = -670$$ ■

The physical meaning of the answer in Example 2 is that the electric current flowing from the capacitor to the flash bulb after 0.04 seconds is about -670 microamperes.

The Velocity Problem

If you watch the speedometer of a car as you travel in city traffic, you see that the speed doesn't stay the same for very long; that is, the velocity of the car is not constant. We assume from watching the speedometer that the car has a definite velocity at each moment, but how is the "instantaneous" velocity defined? Let's investigate the example of a falling ball.

EXAMPLE 3 Suppose that a ball is dropped from the upper observation deck of the CN Tower in Toronto, 450 m above the ground. Find the velocity of the ball after 5 seconds.

SOLUTION Through experiments carried out four centuries ago, Galileo discovered that the distance fallen by any freely falling body is proportional to the square of the time it has been falling. (This model for free fall neglects air resistance.) If the distance fallen

The CN Tower in Toronto was the tallest freestanding building in the world for 32 years.

after t seconds is denoted by $s(t)$ and measured in meters, then Galileo's law is expressed by the equation

$$s(t) = 4.9t^2$$

The difficulty in finding the velocity after 5 seconds is that we are dealing with a single instant of time ($t = 5$), so no time interval is involved. However, we can approximate the desired quantity by computing the average velocity over the brief time interval of a tenth of a second from $t = 5$ to $t = 5.1$:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{average velocity} &= \frac{\text{change in position}}{\text{time elapsed}} \\ &= \frac{s(5.1) - s(5)}{0.1} \\ &= \frac{4.9(5.1)^2 - 4.9(5)^2}{0.1} = 49.49 \text{ m/s} \end{aligned}$$

The following table shows the results of similar calculations of the average velocity over successively smaller time periods.

Time interval	Average velocity (m/s)
$5 \leqslant t \leqslant 6$	53.9
$5 \leqslant t \leqslant 5.1$	49.49
$5 \leqslant t \leqslant 5.05$	49.245
$5 \leqslant t \leqslant 5.01$	49.049
$5 \leqslant t \leqslant 5.001$	49.0049

It appears that as we shorten the time period, the average velocity is becoming closer to 49 m/s. The **instantaneous velocity** when $t = 5$ is defined to be the limiting value of these average velocities over shorter and shorter time periods that start at $t = 5$. Thus it appears that the (instantaneous) velocity after 5 seconds is

$$v = 49 \text{ m/s}$$

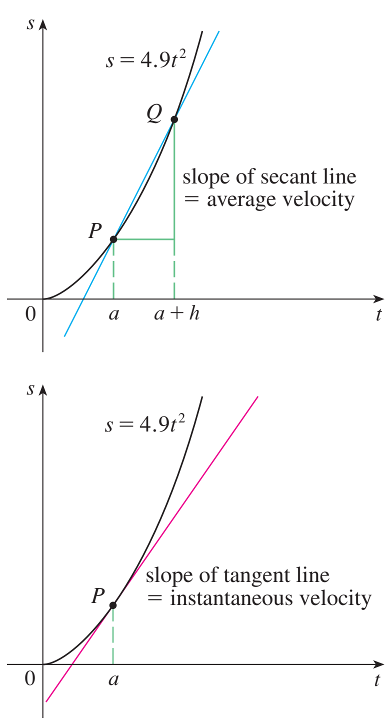


FIGURE 6

You may have the feeling that the calculations used in solving this problem are very similar to those used earlier in this section to find tangents. In fact, there is a close connection between the tangent problem and the problem of finding velocities. If we draw the graph of the distance function of the ball (as in Figure 6) and we consider the points $P(a, 4.9a^2)$ and $Q(a + h, 4.9(a + h)^2)$ on the graph, then the slope of the secant line PQ is

$$m_{PQ} = \frac{4.9(a + h)^2 - 4.9a^2}{(a + h) - a}$$

which is the same as the average velocity over the time interval $[a, a + h]$. Therefore the velocity at time $t = a$ (the limit of these average velocities as h approaches 0) must be equal to the slope of the tangent line at P (the limit of the slopes of the secant lines).

Examples 1 and 3 show that in order to solve tangent and velocity problems we must be able to find limits. After studying methods for computing limits in the next five sections, we will return to the problems of finding tangents and velocities in Section 2.7.

2.1 EXERCISES

1. A tank holds 1000 gallons of water, which drains from the bottom of the tank in half an hour. The values in the table show the volume V of water remaining in the tank (in gallons) after t minutes.

t (min)	5	10	15	20	25	30
V (gal)	694	444	250	111	28	0

(a) If P is the point $(15, 250)$ on the graph of V, find the slopes of the secant lines PQ when Q is the point on the graph with $t = 5, 10, 20, 25$, and 30.
(b) Estimate the slope of the tangent line at P by averaging the slopes of two secant lines.
(c) Use a graph of the function to estimate the slope of the tangent line at P. (This slope represents the rate at which the water is flowing from the tank after 15 minutes.)

2. A cardiac monitor is used to measure the heart rate of a patient after surgery. It compiles the number of heartbeats after t minutes. When the data in the table are graphed, the slope of the tangent line represents the heart rate in beats per minute.

t (min)	36	38	40	42	44
Heartbeats	2530	2661	2806	2948	3080

The monitor estimates this value by calculating the slope of a secant line. Use the data to estimate the patient's heart rate after 42 minutes using the secant line between the points with the given values of t.
(a) $t = 36$ and $t = 42$ (b) $t = 38$ and $t = 42$
(c) $t = 40$ and $t = 42$ (d) $t = 42$ and $t = 44$
What are your conclusions?

3. The point $P(2, -1)$ lies on the curve $y = 1/(1 - x)$.
(a) If Q is the point $(x, 1/(1 - x))$, use your calculator to find the slope of the secant line PQ (correct to six decimal places) for the following values of x:
(i) 1.5 (ii) 1.9 (iii) 1.99 (iv) 1.999
(v) 2.5 (vi) 2.1 (vii) 2.01 (viii) 2.001
(b) Using the results of part (a), guess the value of the slope of the tangent line to the curve at $P(2, -1)$.
(c) Using the slope from part (b), find an equation of the tangent line to the curve at $P(2, -1)$.

4. The point $P(0.5, 0)$ lies on the curve $y = \cos \pi x$.
(a) If Q is the point $(x, \cos \pi x)$, use your calculator to find the slope of the secant line PQ (correct to six decimal places) for the following values of x:
(i) 0 (ii) 0.4 (iii) 0.49
(iv) 0.499 (v) 1 (vi) 0.6
(vii) 0.51 (viii) 0.501
(b) Using the results of part (a), guess the value of the slope of the tangent line to the curve at $P(0.5, 0)$.
(c) Using the slope from part (b), find an equation of the tangent line to the curve at $P(0.5, 0)$.
(d) Sketch the curve, two of the secant lines, and the tangent line.

5. If a ball is thrown into the air with a velocity of 40 ft/s, its height in feet t seconds later is given by $y = 40t - 16t^2$.
(a) Find the average velocity for the time period beginning when $t = 2$ and lasting
(i) 0.5 seconds (ii) 0.1 seconds
(iii) 0.05 seconds (iv) 0.01 seconds
(b) Estimate the instantaneous velocity when $t = 2$.

6. If a rock is thrown upward on the planet Mars with a velocity of 10 m/s, its height in meters t seconds later is given by $y = 10t - 1.86t^2$.
(a) Find the average velocity over the given time intervals:
(i) $[1, 2]$ (ii) $[1, 1.5]$
(iii) $[1, 1.1]$ (iv) $[1, 1.01]$
(v) $[1, 1.001]$
(b) Estimate the instantaneous velocity when $t = 1$.

7. The table shows the position of a motorcyclist after accelerating from rest.

t (seconds)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
s (feet)	0	4.9	20.6	46.5	79.2	124.8	176.7

(a) Find the average velocity for each time period:
(i) $[2, 4]$ (ii) $[3, 4]$ (iii) $[4, 5]$ (iv) $[4, 6]$
(b) Use the graph of s as a function of t to estimate the instantaneous velocity when $t = 3$.

8. The displacement (in centimeters) of a particle moving back and forth along a straight line is given by the equation of motion $s = 2 \sin \pi t + 3 \cos \pi t$, where t is measured in seconds.
(a) Find the average velocity during each time period:
(i) $[1, 2]$ (ii) $[1, 1.1]$
(iii) $[1, 1.01]$ (iv) $[1, 1.001]$
(b) Estimate the instantaneous velocity of the particle when $t = 1$.

9. The point $P(1, 0)$ lies on the curve $y = \sin(10\pi/x)$.
(a) If Q is the point $(x, \sin(10\pi/x))$, find the slope of the secant line PQ (correct to four decimal places) for $x = 2, 1.5, 1.4, 1.3, 1.2, 1.1, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7, 0.8$, and 0.9. Do the slopes appear to be approaching a limit?
(b) Use a graph of the curve to explain why the slopes of the secant lines in part (a) are not close to the slope of the tangent line at P.
(c) By choosing appropriate secant lines, estimate the slope of the tangent line at P.

2.2 The Limit of a Function

Having seen in the preceding section how limits arise when we want to find the tangent to a curve or the velocity of an object, we now turn our attention to limits in general and numerical and graphical methods for computing them.

Let's investigate the behavior of the function f defined by $f(x) = x^2 - x + 2$ for values of x near 2. The following table gives values of $f(x)$ for values of x close to 2 but not equal to 2.

x	$f(x)$	x	$f(x)$
1.0	2.000000	3.0	8.000000
1.5	2.750000	2.5	5.750000
1.8	3.440000	2.2	4.640000
1.9	3.710000	2.1	4.310000
1.95	3.852500	2.05	4.152500
1.99	3.970100	2.01	4.030100
1.995	3.985025	2.005	4.015025
1.999	3.997001	2.001	4.003001

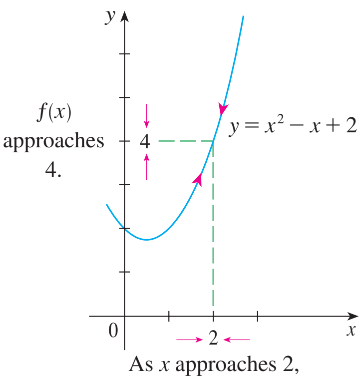


FIGURE 1

From the table and the graph of f (a parabola) shown in Figure 1 we see that the closer x is to 2 (on either side of 2), the closer $f(x)$ is to 4. In fact, it appears that we can make the values of $f(x)$ as close as we like to 4 by taking x sufficiently close to 2. We express this by saying "the limit of the function $f(x) = x^2 - x + 2$ as x approaches 2 is equal to 4." The notation for this is

$$\lim_{x \to 2} (x^2 - x + 2) = 4$$

In general, we use the following notation.

1 Intuitive Definition of a Limit Suppose $f(x)$ is defined when x is near the number a. (This means that f is defined on some open interval that contains a, except possibly at a itself.) Then we write

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$$

and say "the limit of $f(x)$, as x approaches a, equals L"

if we can make the values of $f(x)$ arbitrarily close to L (as close to L as we like) by restricting x to be sufficiently close to a (on either side of a) but not equal to a.

Roughly speaking, this says that the values of $f(x)$ approach L as x approaches a. In other words, the values of $f(x)$ tend to get closer and closer to the number L as x gets closer and closer to the number a (from either side of a) but $x \neq a$. (A more precise definition will be given in Section 2.4.)

An alternative notation for

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$$

is $$f(x) \to L \quad \text{as} \quad x \to a$$

which is usually read "$f(x)$ approaches L as x approaches a."

Notice the phrase "but $x \neq a$" in the definition of limit. This means that in finding the limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches a, we never consider $x = a$. In fact, $f(x)$ need not even be defined when $x = a$. The only thing that matters is how f is defined *near* a.

Figure 2 shows the graphs of three functions. Note that in part (c), $f(a)$ is not defined and in part (b), $f(a) \neq L$. But in each case, regardless of what happens at a, it is true that $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$.

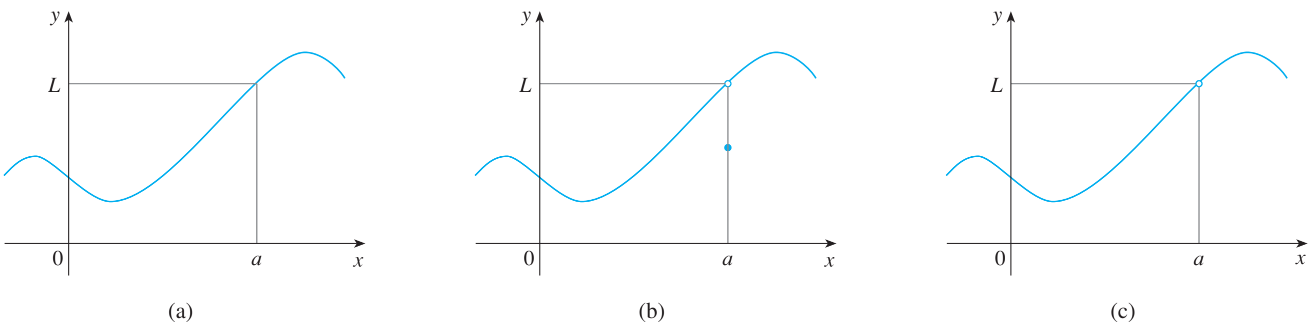


FIGURE 2 $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$ in all three cases

EXAMPLE 1 Guess the value of $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 1} \frac{x - 1}{x^2 - 1}$.

SOLUTION Notice that the function $f(x) = (x - 1)/(x^2 - 1)$ is not defined when $x = 1$, but that doesn't matter because the definition of $\lim_{x \to a} f(x)$ says that we consider values of x that are close to a but not equal to a.

$x < 1$	$f(x)$
0.5	0.666667
0.9	0.526316
0.99	0.502513
0.999	0.500250
0.9999	0.500025

$x > 1$	$f(x)$
1.5	0.400000
1.1	0.476190
1.01	0.497512
1.001	0.499750
1.0001	0.499975

The tables at the left give values of $f(x)$ (correct to six decimal places) for values of x that approach 1 (but are not equal to 1). On the basis of the values in the tables, we make the guess that

$$\lim_{x \to 1} \frac{x - 1}{x^2 - 1} = 0.5$$

Example 1 is illustrated by the graph of f in Figure 3. Now let's change f slightly by giving it the value 2 when $x = 1$ and calling the resulting function g:

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x - 1}{x^2 - 1} & \text{if } x \neq 1 \\ 2 & \text{if } x = 1 \end{cases}$$

This new function g still has the same limit as x approaches 1. (See Figure 4.)

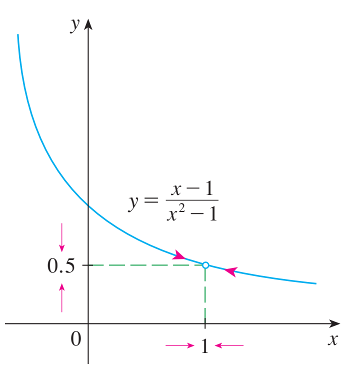


FIGURE 3

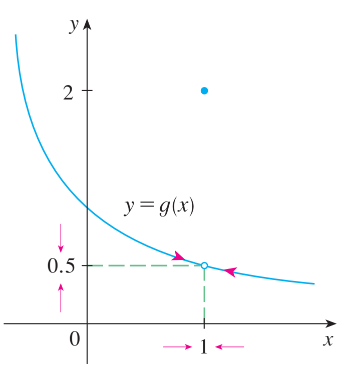


FIGURE 4

EXAMPLE 2 Estimate the value of $\lim_{t \to 0} \dfrac{\sqrt{t^2 + 9} - 3}{t^2}$.

SOLUTION The table lists values of the function for several values of t near 0.

t	$\dfrac{\sqrt{t^2+9}-3}{t^2}$
± 1.0	$0.162277\ldots$
± 0.5	$0.165525\ldots$
± 0.1	$0.166620\ldots$
± 0.05	$0.166655\ldots$
± 0.01	$0.166666\ldots$

As t approaches 0, the values of the function seem to approach $0.1666666\ldots$ and so we guess that

$$\lim_{t \to 0} \frac{\sqrt{t^2 + 9} - 3}{t^2} = \frac{1}{6}$$

■

t	$\dfrac{\sqrt{t^2+9}-3}{t^2}$
± 0.001	0.166667
± 0.0001	0.166670
± 0.00001	0.167000
± 0.000001	0.000000

In Example 2 what would have happened if we had taken even smaller values of t? The table in the margin shows the results from one calculator; you can see that something strange seems to be happening.

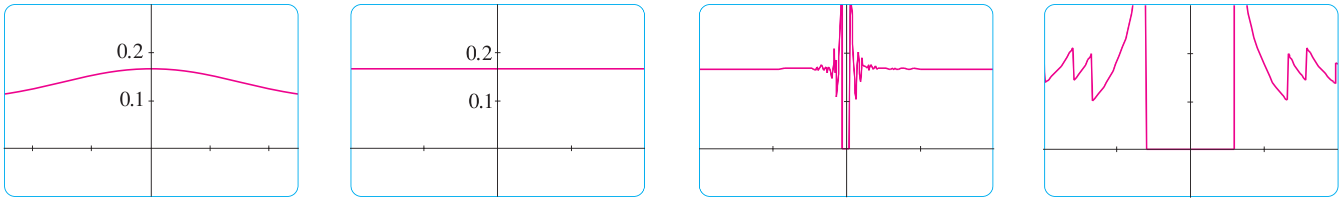
If you try these calculations on your own calculator you might get different values, but eventually you will get the value 0 if you make t sufficiently small. Does this mean that the answer is really 0 instead of $\frac{1}{6}$? No, the value of the limit is $\frac{1}{6}$, as we will show in the next section. The problem is that the calculator gave false values because $\sqrt{t^2 + 9}$ is very close to 3 when t is small. (In fact, when t is sufficiently small, a calculator's value for $\sqrt{t^2 + 9}$ is $3.000\ldots$ to as many digits as the calculator is capable of carrying.)

www.stewartcalculus.com
For a further explanation of why calculators sometimes give false values, click on *Lies My Calculator and Computer Told Me*. In particular, see the section called *The Perils of Subtraction.*

Something similar happens when we try to graph the function

$$f(t) = \frac{\sqrt{t^2 + 9} - 3}{t^2}$$

of Example 2 on a graphing calculator or computer. Parts (a) and (b) of Figure 5 show quite accurate graphs of f, and when we use the trace mode (if available) we can estimate easily that the limit is about $\frac{1}{6}$. But if we zoom in too much, as in parts (c) and (d), then we get inaccurate graphs, again because of rounding errors from the subtraction.



(a) $-5 \leqslant t \leqslant 5$ (b) $-0.1 \leqslant t \leqslant 0.1$ (c) $-10^{-6} \leqslant t \leqslant 10^{-6}$ (d) $-10^{-7} \leqslant t \leqslant 10^{-7}$

FIGURE 5

EXAMPLE 3 Guess the value of $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x}$.

SOLUTION The function $f(x) = (\sin x)/x$ is not defined when $x = 0$. Using a calculator (and remembering that, if $x \in \mathbb{R}$, $\sin x$ means the sine of the angle whose *radian* measure is x), we construct a table of values correct to eight decimal places. From the table at the left and the graph in Figure 6 we guess that

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$$

x	$\frac{\sin x}{x}$
± 1.0	0.84147098
± 0.5	0.95885108
± 0.4	0.97354586
± 0.3	0.98506736
± 0.2	0.99334665
± 0.1	0.99833417
± 0.05	0.99958339
± 0.01	0.99998333
± 0.005	0.99999583
± 0.001	0.99999983

This guess is in fact correct, as will be proved in Chapter 3 using a geometric argument.

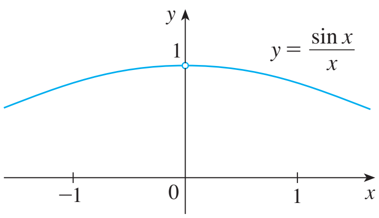


FIGURE 6

EXAMPLE 4 Investigate $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} \sin\frac{\pi}{x}$.

SOLUTION Again the function $f(x) = \sin(\pi/x)$ is undefined at 0. Evaluating the function for some small values of x, we get

$$f(1) = \sin \pi = 0 \qquad f\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) = \sin 2\pi = 0$$

$$f\left(\tfrac{1}{3}\right) = \sin 3\pi = 0 \qquad f\left(\tfrac{1}{4}\right) = \sin 4\pi = 0$$

$$f(0.1) = \sin 10\pi = 0 \qquad f(0.01) = \sin 100\pi = 0$$

Similarly, $f(0.001) = f(0.0001) = 0$. On the basis of this information we might be tempted to guess that

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \sin\frac{\pi}{x} = 0$$

but this time our guess is wrong. Note that although $f(1/n) = \sin n\pi = 0$ for any integer n, it is also true that $f(x) = 1$ for infinitely many values of x (such as $2/5$ or $2/101$) that approach 0. You can see this from the graph of f shown in Figure 7.

Computer Algebra Systems
Computer algebra systems (CAS) have commands that compute limits. In order to avoid the types of pitfalls demonstrated in Examples 2, 4, and 5, they don't find limits by numerical experimentation. Instead, they use more sophisticated techniques such as computing infinite series. If you have access to a CAS, use the limit command to compute the limits in the examples of this section and to check your answers in the exercises of this chapter.

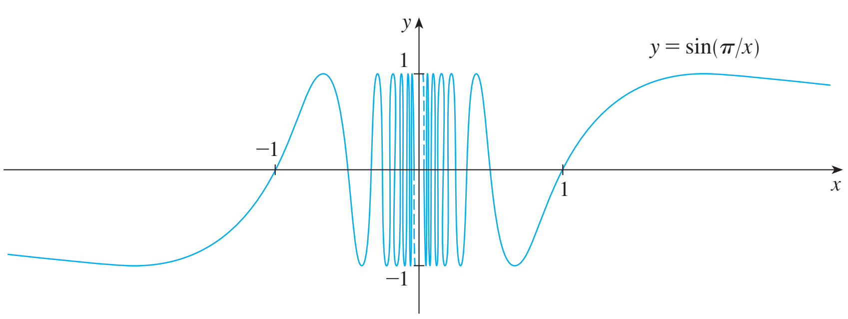


FIGURE 7

The dashed lines near the y-axis indicate that the values of $\sin(\pi/x)$ oscillate between 1 and -1 infinitely often as x approaches 0. (See Exercise 51.)

Since the values of $f(x)$ do not approach a fixed number as x approaches 0,

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \sin \frac{\pi}{x} \quad \text{does not exist}$$

x	$x^3 + \dfrac{\cos 5x}{10{,}000}$
1	1.000028
0.5	0.124920
0.1	0.001088
0.05	0.000222
0.01	0.000101

x	$x^3 + \dfrac{\cos 5x}{10{,}000}$
0.005	0.00010009
0.001	0.00010000

EXAMPLE 5 Find $\lim_{x \to 0} \left(x^3 + \dfrac{\cos 5x}{10{,}000} \right)$.

SOLUTION As before, we construct a table of values. From the first table in the margin it appears that

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \left(x^3 + \frac{\cos 5x}{10{,}000} \right) = 0$$

But if we persevere with smaller values of x, the second table suggests that

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \left(x^3 + \frac{\cos 5x}{10{,}000} \right) = 0.000100 = \frac{1}{10{,}000}$$

Later we will see that $\lim_{x \to 0} \cos 5x = 1$; then it follows that the limit is 0.0001.

Examples 4 and 5 illustrate some of the pitfalls in guessing the value of a limit. It is easy to guess the wrong value if we use inappropriate values of x, but it is difficult to know when to stop calculating values. And, as the discussion after Example 2 shows, sometimes calculators and computers give the wrong values. In the next section, however, we will develop foolproof methods for calculating limits.

One-Sided Limits

EXAMPLE 6 The Heaviside function H is defined by

$$H(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if} \quad t < 0 \\ 1 & \text{if} \quad t \geqslant 0 \end{cases}$$

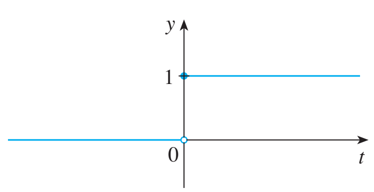


FIGURE 8
The Heaviside function

[This function is named after the electrical engineer Oliver Heaviside (1850–1925) and can be used to describe an electric current that is switched on at time $t = 0$.] Its graph is shown in Figure 8.

As t approaches 0 from the left, $H(t)$ approaches 0. As t approaches 0 from the right, $H(t)$ approaches 1. There is no single number that $H(t)$ approaches as t approaches 0. Therefore $\lim_{t \to 0} H(t)$ does not exist.

We noticed in Example 6 that $H(t)$ approaches 0 as t approaches 0 from the left and $H(t)$ approaches 1 as t approaches 0 from the right. We indicate this situation symbolically by writing

$$\lim_{t \to 0^-} H(t) = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{t \to 0^+} H(t) = 1$$

The notation $t \to 0^-$ indicates that we consider only values of t that are less than 0. Likewise, $t \to 0^+$ indicates that we consider only values of t that are greater than 0.

2 Definition of One-Sided Limits We write

$$\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = L$$

and say the **left-hand limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches a** [or the **limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches a from the left**] is equal to L if we can make the values of $f(x)$ arbitrarily close to L by taking x to be sufficiently close to a with x *less than* a.

Notice that Definition 2 differs from Definition 1 only in that we require x to be less than a. Similarly, if we require that x be greater than a, we get "the **right-hand limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches a** is equal to L" and we write

$$\lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = L$$

Thus the notation $x \to a^+$ means that we consider only x *greater than* a. These definitions are illustrated in Figure 9.

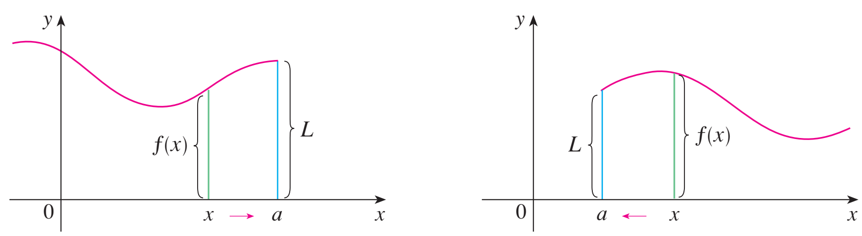


FIGURE 9

(a) $\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = L$ (b) $\lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = L$

By comparing Definition 1 with the definitions of one-sided limits, we see that the following is true.

3 $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$ if and only if $\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = L$ and $\lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = L$

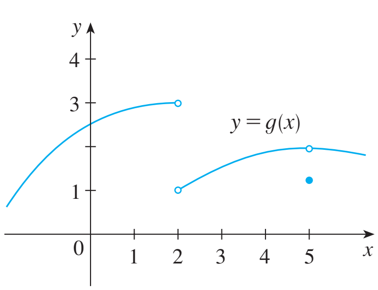


FIGURE 10

EXAMPLE 7 The graph of a function g is shown in Figure 10. Use it to state the values (if they exist) of the following:

(a) $\lim_{x \to 2^-} g(x)$ (b) $\lim_{x \to 2^+} g(x)$ (c) $\lim_{x \to 2} g(x)$

(d) $\lim_{x \to 5^-} g(x)$ (e) $\lim_{x \to 5^+} g(x)$ (f) $\lim_{x \to 5} g(x)$

SOLUTION From the graph we see that the values of $g(x)$ approach 3 as x approaches 2 from the left, but they approach 1 as x approaches 2 from the right. Therefore

$$\text{(a)}\ \lim_{x \to 2^-} g(x) = 3 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \text{(b)}\ \lim_{x \to 2^+} g(x) = 1$$

(c) Since the left and right limits are different, we conclude from (3) that $\lim_{x \to 2} g(x)$ does not exist.

The graph also shows that

$$\text{(d)}\ \lim_{x \to 5^-} g(x) = 2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \text{(e)}\ \lim_{x \to 5^+} g(x) = 2$$

(f) This time the left and right limits are the same and so, by (3), we have

$$\lim_{x \to 5} g(x) = 2$$

Despite this fact, notice that $g(5) \neq 2$. ■

■ Infinite Limits

EXAMPLE 8 Find $\lim_{x \to 0} \dfrac{1}{x^2}$ if it exists.

x	$\dfrac{1}{x^2}$
± 1	1
± 0.5	4
± 0.2	25
± 0.1	100
± 0.05	400
± 0.01	10,000
± 0.001	1,000,000

SOLUTION As x becomes close to 0, x^2 also becomes close to 0, and $1/x^2$ becomes very large. (See the table in the margin.) In fact, it appears from the graph of the function $f(x) = 1/x^2$ shown in Figure 11 that the values of $f(x)$ can be made arbitrarily large by taking x close enough to 0. Thus the values of $f(x)$ do not approach a number, so $\lim_{x \to 0} (1/x^2)$ does not exist. ■

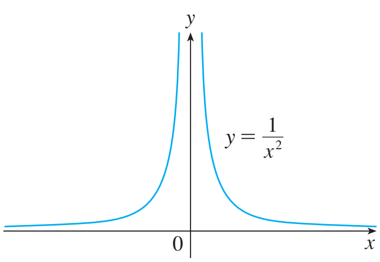


FIGURE 11

To indicate the kind of behavior exhibited in Example 8, we use the notation

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{1}{x^2} = \infty$$

This does not mean that we are regarding ∞ as a number. Nor does it mean that the limit exists. It simply expresses the particular way in which the limit does not exist: $1/x^2$ can be made as large as we like by taking x close enough to 0.

In general, we write symbolically

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = \infty$$

to indicate that the values of $f(x)$ tend to become larger and larger (or "increase without bound") as x becomes closer and closer to a.

> **4 Intuitive Definition of an Infinite Limit** Let f be a function defined on both sides of a, except possibly at a itself. Then
>
> $$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = \infty$$
>
> means that the values of $f(x)$ can be made arbitrarily large (as large as we please) by taking x sufficiently close to a, but not equal to a.

Another notation for $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = \infty$ is

$$f(x) \to \infty \qquad \text{as} \qquad x \to a$$

Again, the symbol ∞ is not a number, but the expression $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = \infty$ is often read as

"the limit of $f(x)$, as x approaches a, is infinity"

or "$f(x)$ becomes infinite as x approaches a"

or "$f(x)$ increases without bound as x approaches a"

This definition is illustrated graphically in Figure 12.

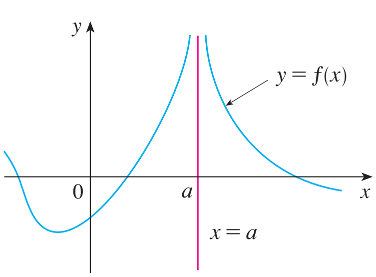


FIGURE 12
$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = \infty$

When we say a number is "large negative," we mean that it is negative but its magnitude (absolute value) is large.

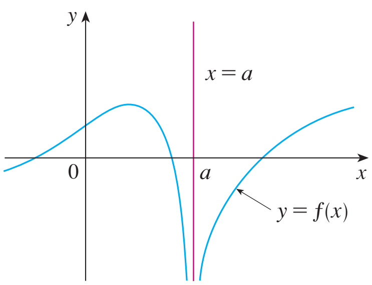


FIGURE 13
$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = -\infty$

A similar sort of limit, for functions that become large negative as x gets close to a, is defined in Definition 5 and is illustrated in Figure 13.

5 Definition Let f be a function defined on both sides of a, except possibly at a itself. Then

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = -\infty$$

means that the values of $f(x)$ can be made arbitrarily large negative by taking x sufficiently close to a, but not equal to a.

The symbol $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = -\infty$ can be read as "the limit of $f(x)$, as x approaches a, is negative infinity" or "$f(x)$ decreases without bound as x approaches a." As an example we have

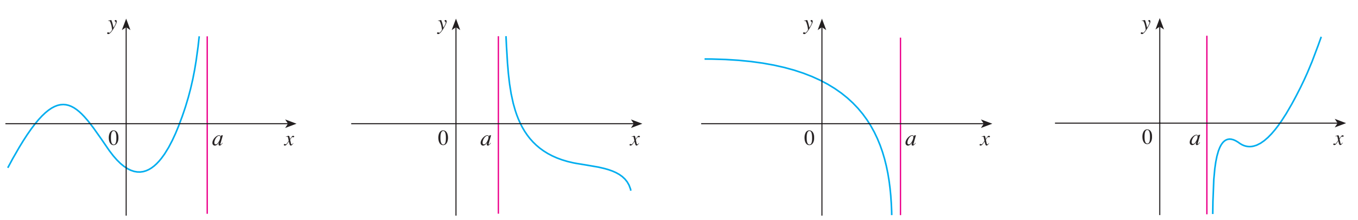
$$\lim_{x \to 0} \left(-\frac{1}{x^2} \right) = -\infty$$

Similar definitions can be given for the one-sided infinite limits

$$\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = \infty \qquad \lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = \infty$$

$$\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = -\infty \qquad \lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = -\infty$$

remembering that $x \to a^-$ means that we consider only values of x that are less than a, and similarly $x \to a^+$ means that we consider only $x > a$. Illustrations of these four cases are given in Figure 14.



(a) $\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = \infty$ (b) $\lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = \infty$ (c) $\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = -\infty$ (d) $\lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = -\infty$

FIGURE 14

6 Definition The vertical line $x = a$ is called a **vertical asymptote** of the curve $y = f(x)$ if at least one of the following statements is true:

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = \infty \qquad \lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = \infty \qquad \lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = \infty$$

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = -\infty \qquad \lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = -\infty \qquad \lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = -\infty$$

For instance, the y-axis is a vertical asymptote of the curve $y = 1/x^2$ because $\lim_{x \to 0} (1/x^2) = \infty$. In Figure 14 the line $x = a$ is a vertical asymptote in each of the four cases shown. In general, knowledge of vertical asymptotes is very useful in sketching graphs.

EXAMPLE 9 Find $\lim_{x \to 3^+} \dfrac{2x}{x - 3}$ and $\lim_{x \to 3^-} \dfrac{2x}{x - 3}$.

SOLUTION If x is close to 3 but larger than 3, then the denominator $x - 3$ is a small positive number and $2x$ is close to 6. So the quotient $2x/(x - 3)$ is a large *positive* number. [For instance, if $x = 3.01$ then $2x/(x - 3) = 6.02/0.01 = 602$.] Thus, intuitively, we see that

$$\lim_{x \to 3^+} \frac{2x}{x - 3} = \infty$$

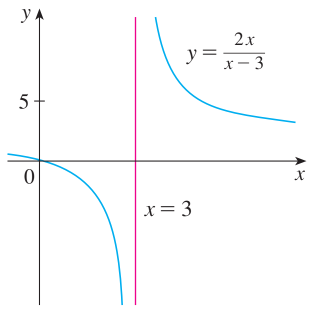


FIGURE 15

Likewise, if x is close to 3 but smaller than 3, then $x - 3$ is a small negative number but $2x$ is still a positive number (close to 6). So $2x/(x - 3)$ is a numerically large *negative* number. Thus

$$\lim_{x \to 3^-} \frac{2x}{x - 3} = -\infty$$

The graph of the curve $y = 2x/(x - 3)$ is given in Figure 15. The line $x = 3$ is a vertical asymptote. ■

EXAMPLE 10 Find the vertical asymptotes of $f(x) = \tan x$.

SOLUTION Because

$$\tan x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x}$$

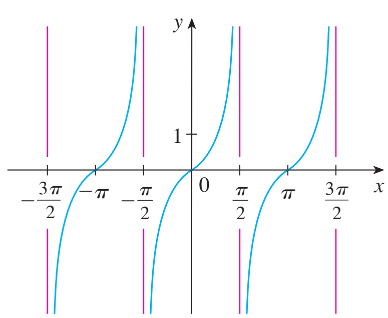


FIGURE 16
$y = \tan x$

there are potential vertical asymptotes where $\cos x = 0$. In fact, since $\cos x \to 0^+$ as $x \to (\pi/2)^-$ and $\cos x \to 0^-$ as $x \to (\pi/2)^+$, whereas $\sin x$ is positive (near 1) when x is near $\pi/2$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to (\pi/2)^-} \tan x = \infty \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to (\pi/2)^+} \tan x = -\infty$$

This shows that the line $x = \pi/2$ is a vertical asymptote. Similar reasoning shows that the lines $x = \pi/2 + n\pi$, where n is an integer, are all vertical asymptotes of $f(x) = \tan x$. The graph in Figure 16 confirms this. ■

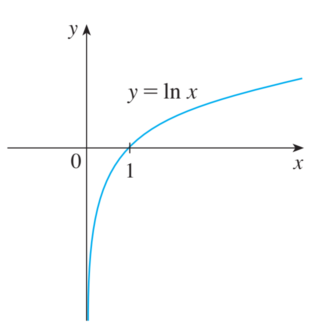


FIGURE 17
The y-axis is a vertical asymptote of the natural logarithmic function.

Another example of a function whose graph has a vertical asymptote is the natural logarithmic function $y = \ln x$. From Figure 17 we see that

$$\boxed{\lim_{x \to 0^+} \ln x = -\infty}$$

and so the line $x = 0$ (the y-axis) is a vertical asymptote. In fact, the same is true for $y = \log_b x$ provided that $b > 1$. (See Figures 1.5.11 and 1.5.12.)

2.2 EXERCISES

1. Explain in your own words what is meant by the equation

$$\lim_{x \to 2} f(x) = 5$$

Is it possible for this statement to be true and yet $f(2) = 3$? Explain.

2. Explain what it means to say that

$$\lim_{x \to 1^-} f(x) = 3 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to 1^+} f(x) = 7$$

In this situation is it possible that $\lim_{x \to 1} f(x)$ exists? Explain.

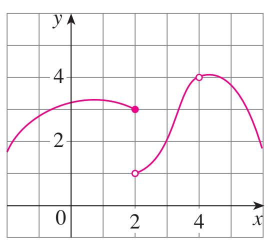
3. Explain the meaning of each of the following.

(a) $\lim_{x \to -3} f(x) = \infty$ (b) $\lim_{x \to 4^+} f(x) = -\infty$

4. Use the given graph of f to state the value of each quantity, if it exists. If it does not exist, explain why.

(a) $\lim_{x \to 2^-} f(x)$ (b) $\lim_{x \to 2^+} f(x)$ (c) $\lim_{x \to 2} f(x)$

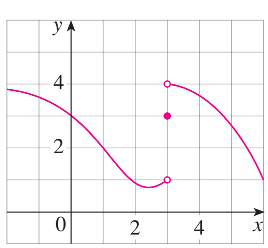
(d) $f(2)$ (e) $\lim_{x \to 4} f(x)$ (f) $f(4)$



5. For the function f whose graph is given, state the value of each quantity, if it exists. If it does not exist, explain why.

(a) $\lim_{x \to 1} f(x)$ (b) $\lim_{x \to 3^-} f(x)$ (c) $\lim_{x \to 3^+} f(x)$

(d) $\lim_{x \to 3} f(x)$ (e) $f(3)$



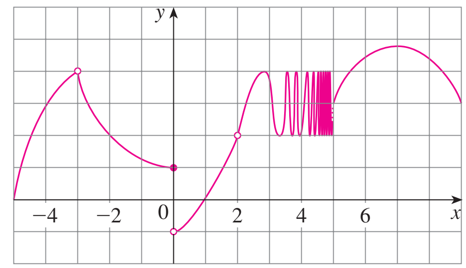
6. For the function h whose graph is given, state the value of each quantity, if it exists. If it does not exist, explain why.

(a) $\lim_{x \to -3^-} h(x)$ (b) $\lim_{x \to -3^+} h(x)$ (c) $\lim_{x \to -3} h(x)$

(d) $h(-3)$ (e) $\lim_{x \to 0^-} h(x)$ (f) $\lim_{x \to 0^+} h(x)$

(g) $\lim_{x \to 0} h(x)$ (h) $h(0)$ (i) $\lim_{x \to 2} h(x)$

(j) $h(2)$ (k) $\lim_{x \to 5^+} h(x)$ (l) $\lim_{x \to 5^-} h(x)$

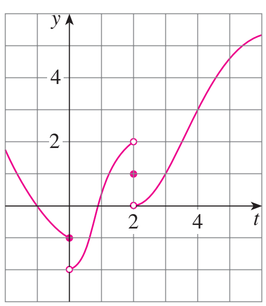


7. For the function g whose graph is given, state the value of each quantity, if it exists. If it does not exist, explain why.

(a) $\lim_{t \to 0^-} g(t)$ (b) $\lim_{t \to 0^+} g(t)$ (c) $\lim_{t \to 0} g(t)$

(d) $\lim_{t \to 2^-} g(t)$ (e) $\lim_{t \to 2^+} g(t)$ (f) $\lim_{t \to 2} g(t)$

(g) $g(2)$ (h) $\lim_{t \to 4} g(t)$

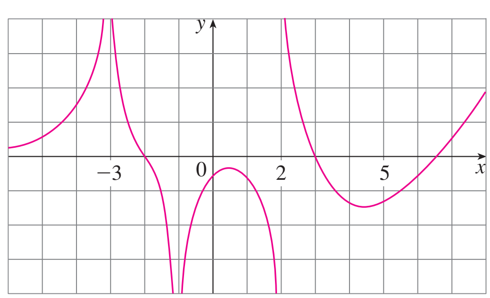


8. For the function A whose graph is shown, state the following.

(a) $\lim_{x \to -3} A(x)$ (b) $\lim_{x \to 2^-} A(x)$

(c) $\lim_{x \to 2^+} A(x)$ (d) $\lim_{x \to -1} A(x)$

(e) The equations of the vertical asymptotes

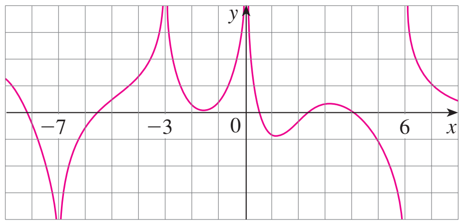


9. For the function f whose graph is shown, state the following.

(a) $\lim_{x \to -7} f(x)$ (b) $\lim_{x \to -3} f(x)$ (c) $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x)$

(d) $\lim_{x \to 6^-} f(x)$ (e) $\lim_{x \to 6^+} f(x)$

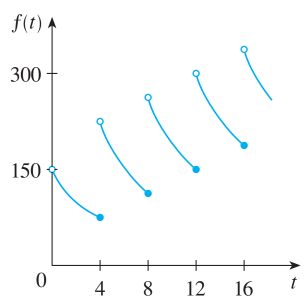
(f) The equations of the vertical asymptotes.



10. A patient receives a 150-mg injection of a drug every 4 hours. The graph shows the amount $f(t)$ of the drug in the bloodstream after t hours. Find

$$\lim_{t \to 12^-} f(t) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{t \to 12^+} f(t)$$

and explain the significance of these one-sided limits.



11–12 Sketch the graph of the function and use it to determine the values of a for which $\lim_{x \to a} f(x)$ exists.

11. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 + x & \text{if } x < -1 \\ x^2 & \text{if } -1 \leqslant x < 1 \\ 2 - x & \text{if } x \geqslant 1 \end{cases}$

12. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 + \sin x & \text{if } x < 0 \\ \cos x & \text{if } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi \\ \sin x & \text{if } x > \pi \end{cases}$

13–14 Use the graph of the function f to state the value of each limit, if it exists. If it does not exist, explain why.

(a) $\lim_{x \to 0^-} f(x)$ (b) $\lim_{x \to 0^+} f(x)$ (c) $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x)$

13. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{1 + e^{1/x}}$ **14.** $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 + x}{\sqrt{x^3 + x^2}}$

15–18 Sketch the graph of an example of a function f that satisfies all of the given conditions.

15. $\lim_{x \to 0^-} f(x) = -1, \quad \lim_{x \to 0^+} f(x) = 2, \quad f(0) = 1$

16. $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x) = 1, \quad \lim_{x \to 3^-} f(x) = -2, \quad \lim_{x \to 3^+} f(x) = 2,$
$f(0) = -1, \quad f(3) = 1$

17. $\lim_{x \to 3^+} f(x) = 4, \quad \lim_{x \to 3^-} f(x) = 2, \quad \lim_{x \to -2} f(x) = 2,$
$f(3) = 3, \quad f(-2) = 1$

18. $\lim_{x \to 0^-} f(x) = 2, \quad \lim_{x \to 0^+} f(x) = 0, \quad \lim_{x \to 4^-} f(x) = 3,$
$\lim_{x \to 4^+} f(x) = 0, \quad f(0) = 2, \quad f(4) = 1$

19–22 Guess the value of the limit (if it exists) by evaluating the function at the given numbers (correct to six decimal places).

19. $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 3} \frac{x^2 - 3x}{x^2 - 9},$
$x = 3.1, 3.05, 3.01, 3.001, 3.0001,$
$2.9, 2.95, 2.99, 2.999, 2.9999$

20. $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to -3} \frac{x^2 - 3x}{x^2 - 9},$
$x = -2.5, -2.9, -2.95, -2.99, -2.999, -2.9999,$
$-3.5, -3.1, -3.05, -3.01, -3.001, -3.0001$

21. $\displaystyle\lim_{t \to 0} \frac{e^{5t} - 1}{t}, \quad t = \pm 0.5, \pm 0.1, \pm 0.01, \pm 0.001, \pm 0.0001$

22. $\displaystyle\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{(2 + h)^5 - 32}{h},$
$h = \pm 0.5, \pm 0.1, \pm 0.01, \pm 0.001, \pm 0.0001$

23–28 Use a table of values to estimate the value of the limit. If you have a graphing device, use it to confirm your result graphically.

23. $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 4} \frac{\ln x - \ln 4}{x - 4}$ **24.** $\displaystyle\lim_{p \to -1} \frac{1 + p^9}{1 + p^{15}}$

25. $\displaystyle\lim_{\theta \to 0} \frac{\sin 3\theta}{\tan 2\theta}$ **26.** $\displaystyle\lim_{t \to 0} \frac{5^t - 1}{t}$

27. $\lim_{x \to 0^+} x^x$ **28.** $\lim_{x \to 0^+} x^2 \ln x$

29. (a) By graphing the function $f(x) = (\cos 2x - \cos x)/x^2$ and zooming in toward the point where the graph crosses the y-axis, estimate the value of $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x)$.
(b) Check your answer in part (a) by evaluating $f(x)$ for values of x that approach 0.

30. (a) Estimate the value of

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sin x}{\sin \pi x}$$

by graphing the function $f(x) = (\sin x)/(\sin \pi x)$. State your answer correct to two decimal places.
(b) Check your answer in part (a) by evaluating $f(x)$ for values of x that approach 0.

31–43 Determine the infinite limit.

31. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to5^+}\frac{x+1}{x-5}$

32. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to5^-}\frac{x+1}{x-5}$

33. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to1}\frac{2-x}{(x-1)^2}$

34. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to3^-}\frac{\sqrt{x}}{(x-3)^5}$

35. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to3^+}\ln(x^2-9)$

36. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to0^+}\ln(\sin x)$

37. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to(\pi/2)^+}\frac{1}{x}\sec x$

38. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\pi^-}\cot x$

39. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to2\pi^-}x\csc x$

40. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to2^-}\frac{x^2-2x}{x^2-4x+4}$

41. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to2^+}\frac{x^2-2x-8}{x^2-5x+6}$

42. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to0^+}\left(\frac{1}{x}-\ln x\right)$

43. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to0}(\ln x^2-x^{-2})$

44. (a) Find the vertical asymptotes of the function

$$y=\frac{x^2+1}{3x-2x^2}$$

(b) Confirm your answer to part (a) by graphing the function.

45. Determine $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to1^-}\frac{1}{x^3-1}$ and $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to1^+}\frac{1}{x^3-1}$

(a) by evaluating $f(x)=1/(x^3-1)$ for values of x that approach 1 from the left and from the right,
(b) by reasoning as in Example 9, and
(c) from a graph of f.

46. (a) By graphing the function $f(x)=(\tan 4x)/x$ and zooming in toward the point where the graph crosses the y-axis, estimate the value of $\lim_{x\to0}f(x)$.
(b) Check your answer in part (a) by evaluating $f(x)$ for values of x that approach 0.

47. (a) Estimate the value of the limit $\lim_{x\to0}(1+x)^{1/x}$ to five decimal places. Does this number look familiar?
(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing the function $y=(1+x)^{1/x}$.

48. (a) Graph the function $f(x)=e^x+\ln|x-4|$ for $0\leqslant x\leqslant5$. Do you think the graph is an accurate representation of f?
(b) How would you get a graph that represents f better?

49. (a) Evaluate the function $f(x)=x^2-(2^x/1000)$ for $x=1$, 0.8, 0.6, 0.4, 0.2, 0.1, and 0.05, and guess the value of

$$\lim_{x\to0}\left(x^2-\frac{2^x}{1000}\right)$$

(b) Evaluate $f(x)$ for $x=0.04$, 0.02, 0.01, 0.005, 0.003, and 0.001. Guess again.

50. (a) Evaluate $h(x)=(\tan x-x)/x^3$ for $x=1$, 0.5, 0.1, 0.05, 0.01, and 0.005.
(b) Guess the value of $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to0}\frac{\tan x-x}{x^3}$.
(c) Evaluate $h(x)$ for successively smaller values of x until you finally reach a value of 0 for $h(x)$. Are you still confident that your guess in part (b) is correct? Explain why you eventually obtained 0 values. (In Section 4.4 a method for evaluating this limit will be explained.)
(d) Graph the function h in the viewing rectangle $[-1, 1]$ by $[0, 1]$. Then zoom in toward the point where the graph crosses the y-axis to estimate the limit of $h(x)$ as x approaches 0. Continue to zoom in until you observe distortions in the graph of h. Compare with the results of part (c).

51. Graph the function $f(x)=\sin(\pi/x)$ of Example 4 in the viewing rectangle $[-1, 1]$ by $[-1, 1]$. Then zoom in toward the origin several times. Comment on the behavior of this function.

52. Consider the function $f(x)=\tan\dfrac{1}{x}$.

(a) Show that $f(x)=0$ for $x=\dfrac{1}{\pi},\dfrac{1}{2\pi},\dfrac{1}{3\pi},\ldots$
(b) Show that $f(x)=1$ for $x=\dfrac{4}{\pi},\dfrac{4}{5\pi},\dfrac{4}{9\pi},\ldots$
(c) What can you conclude about $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to0^+}\tan\frac{1}{x}$?

53. Use a graph to estimate the equations of all the vertical asymptotes of the curve

$$y=\tan(2\sin x)\qquad -\pi\leqslant x\leqslant\pi$$

Then find the exact equations of these asymptotes.

54. In the theory of relativity, the mass of a particle with velocity v is

$$m=\frac{m_0}{\sqrt{1-v^2/c^2}}$$

where m_0 is the mass of the particle at rest and c is the speed of light. What happens as $v\to c^-$?

55. (a) Use numerical and graphical evidence to guess the value of the limit

$$\lim_{x\to1}\frac{x^3-1}{\sqrt{x}-1}$$

(b) How close to 1 does x have to be to ensure that the function in part (a) is within a distance 0.5 of its limit?

2.3 Calculating Limits Using the Limit Laws

In Section 2.2 we used calculators and graphs to guess the values of limits, but we saw that such methods don't always lead to the correct answer. In this section we use the following properties of limits, called the *Limit Laws*, to calculate limits.

Limit Laws Suppose that c is a constant and the limits

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to a} g(x)$$

exist. Then

1. $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) + g(x)] = \lim_{x \to a} f(x) + \lim_{x \to a} g(x)$

2. $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) - g(x)] = \lim_{x \to a} f(x) - \lim_{x \to a} g(x)$

3. $\lim_{x \to a} [cf(x)] = c \lim_{x \to a} f(x)$

4. $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x)g(x)] = \lim_{x \to a} f(x) \cdot \lim_{x \to a} g(x)$

5. $\lim_{x \to a} \dfrac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \dfrac{\lim_{x \to a} f(x)}{\lim_{x \to a} g(x)} \quad \text{if } \lim_{x \to a} g(x) \neq 0$

These five laws can be stated verbally as follows:

Sum Law
1. The limit of a sum is the sum of the limits.

Difference Law
2. The limit of a difference is the difference of the limits.

Constant Multiple Law
3. The limit of a constant times a function is the constant times the limit of the function.

Product Law
4. The limit of a product is the product of the limits.

Quotient Law
5. The limit of a quotient is the quotient of the limits (provided that the limit of the denominator is not 0).

It is easy to believe that these properties are true. For instance, if $f(x)$ is close to L and $g(x)$ is close to M, it is reasonable to conclude that $f(x) + g(x)$ is close to $L + M$. This gives us an intuitive basis for believing that Law 1 is true. In Section 2.4 we give a precise definition of a limit and use it to prove this law. The proofs of the remaining laws are given in Appendix F.

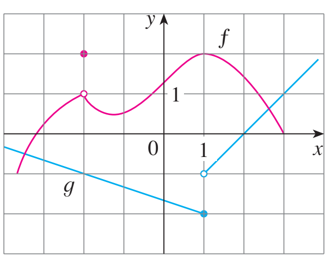


FIGURE 1

EXAMPLE 1 Use the Limit Laws and the graphs of f and g in Figure 1 to evaluate the following limits, if they exist.

(a) $\lim_{x \to -2} [f(x) + 5g(x)]$ (b) $\lim_{x \to 1} [f(x)g(x)]$ (c) $\lim_{x \to 2} \dfrac{f(x)}{g(x)}$

SOLUTION

(a) From the graphs of f and g we see that

$$\lim_{x \to -2} f(x) = 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to -2} g(x) = -1$$

Therefore we have

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x \to -2} [f(x) + 5g(x)] &= \lim_{x \to -2} f(x) + \lim_{x \to -2} [5g(x)] && \text{(by Limit Law 1)}\\ &= \lim_{x \to -2} f(x) + 5 \lim_{x \to -2} g(x) && \text{(by Limit Law 3)}\\ &= 1 + 5(-1) = -4\end{aligned}$$

(b) We see that $\lim_{x \to 1} f(x) = 2$. But $\lim_{x \to 1} g(x)$ does not exist because the left and right limits are different:

$$\lim_{x \to 1^-} g(x) = -2 \qquad \lim_{x \to 1^+} g(x) = -1$$

So we can't use Law 4 for the desired limit. But we *can* use Law 4 for the one-sided limits:

$$\lim_{x \to 1^-} [f(x)g(x)] = \lim_{x \to 1^-} f(x) \cdot \lim_{x \to 1^-} g(x) = 2 \cdot (-2) = -4$$

$$\lim_{x \to 1^+} [f(x)g(x)] = \lim_{x \to 1^+} f(x) \cdot \lim_{x \to 1^+} g(x) = 2 \cdot (-1) = -2$$

The left and right limits aren't equal, so $\lim_{x \to 1} [f(x)g(x)]$ does not exist.

(c) The graphs show that

$$\lim_{x \to 2} f(x) \approx 1.4 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to 2} g(x) = 0$$

Because the limit of the denominator is 0, we can't use Law 5. The given limit does not exist because the denominator approaches 0 while the numerator approaches a nonzero number. ■

If we use the Product Law repeatedly with $g(x) = f(x)$, we obtain the following law.

Power Law

6. $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x)]^n = \left[\lim_{x \to a} f(x)\right]^n$ where n is a positive integer

In applying these six limit laws, we need to use two special limits:

7. $\lim_{x \to a} c = c$ **8.** $\lim_{x \to a} x = a$

These limits are obvious from an intuitive point of view (state them in words or draw graphs of $y = c$ and $y = x$), but proofs based on the precise definition are requested in the exercises for Section 2.4.

If we now put $f(x) = x$ in Law 6 and use Law 8, we get another useful special limit.

9. $\lim_{x \to a} x^n = a^n$ where n is a positive integer

A similar limit holds for roots as follows. (For square roots the proof is outlined in Exercise 2.4.37.)

10. $\lim_{x \to a} \sqrt[n]{x} = \sqrt[n]{a}$ where n is a positive integer

(If n is even, we assume that $a > 0$.)

More generally, we have the following law, which is proved in Section 2.5 as a consequence of Law 10.

Root Law

11. $\lim\limits_{x \to a} \sqrt[n]{f(x)} = \sqrt[n]{\lim\limits_{x \to a} f(x)}$ where n is a positive integer

[If n is even, we assume that $\lim\limits_{x \to a} f(x) > 0$.]

Newton and Limits

Isaac Newton was born on Christmas Day in 1642, the year of Galileo's death. When he entered Cambridge University in 1661 Newton didn't know much mathematics, but he learned quickly by reading Euclid and Descartes and by attending the lectures of Isaac Barrow. Cambridge was closed because of the plague in 1665 and 1666, and Newton returned home to reflect on what he had learned. Those two years were amazingly productive for at that time he made four of his major discoveries: (1) his representation of functions as sums of infinite series, including the binomial theorem; (2) his work on differential and integral calculus; (3) his laws of motion and law of universal gravitation; and (4) his prism experiments on the nature of light and color. Because of a fear of controversy and criticism, he was reluctant to publish his discoveries and it wasn't until 1687, at the urging of the astronomer Halley, that Newton published *Principia Mathematica*. In this work, the greatest scientific treatise ever written, Newton set forth his version of calculus and used it to investigate mechanics, fluid dynamics, and wave motion, and to explain the motion of planets and comets.

The beginnings of calculus are found in the calculations of areas and volumes by ancient Greek scholars such as Eudoxus and Archimedes. Although aspects of the idea of a limit are implicit in their "method of exhaustion," Eudoxus and Archimedes never explicitly formulated the concept of a limit. Likewise, mathematicians such as Cavalieri, Fermat, and Barrow, the immediate precursors of Newton in the development of calculus, did not actually use limits. It was Isaac Newton who was the first to talk explicitly about limits. He explained that the main idea behind limits is that quantities "approach nearer than by any given difference." Newton stated that the limit was the basic concept in calculus, but it was left to later mathematicians like Cauchy to clarify his ideas about limits.

EXAMPLE 2 Evaluate the following limits and justify each step.

(a) $\lim\limits_{x \to 5} (2x^2 - 3x + 4)$ (b) $\lim\limits_{x \to -2} \dfrac{x^3 + 2x^2 - 1}{5 - 3x}$

SOLUTION

(a)

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{x \to 5} (2x^2 - 3x + 4) &= \lim_{x \to 5} (2x^2) - \lim_{x \to 5} (3x) + \lim_{x \to 5} 4 && \text{(by Laws 2 and 1)} \\
&= 2 \lim_{x \to 5} x^2 - 3 \lim_{x \to 5} x + \lim_{x \to 5} 4 && \text{(by 3)} \\
&= 2(5^2) - 3(5) + 4 && \text{(by 9, 8, and 7)} \\
&= 39
\end{aligned}$$

(b) We start by using Law 5, but its use is fully justified only at the final stage when we see that the limits of the numerator and denominator exist and the limit of the denominator is not 0.

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{x \to -2} \frac{x^3 + 2x^2 - 1}{5 - 3x} &= \frac{\lim\limits_{x \to -2} (x^3 + 2x^2 - 1)}{\lim\limits_{x \to -2} (5 - 3x)} && \text{(by Law 5)} \\
&= \frac{\lim\limits_{x \to -2} x^3 + 2 \lim\limits_{x \to -2} x^2 - \lim\limits_{x \to -2} 1}{\lim\limits_{x \to -2} 5 - 3 \lim\limits_{x \to -2} x} && \text{(by 1, 2, and 3)} \\
&= \frac{(-2)^3 + 2(-2)^2 - 1}{5 - 3(-2)} && \text{(by 9, 8, and 7)} \\
&= -\frac{1}{11}
\end{aligned}$$

■

NOTE If we let $f(x) = 2x^2 - 3x + 4$, then $f(5) = 39$. In other words, we would have gotten the correct answer in Example 2(a) by substituting 5 for x. Similarly, direct substitution provides the correct answer in part (b). The functions in Example 2 are a polynomial and a rational function, respectively, and similar use of the Limit Laws proves that direct substitution always works for such functions (see Exercises 57 and 58). We state this fact as follows.

Direct Substitution Property If f is a polynomial or a rational function and a is in the domain of f, then

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = f(a)$$

Functions with the Direct Substitution Property are called *continuous at a* and will be studied in Section 2.5. However, not all limits can be evaluated by direct substitution, as the following examples show.

EXAMPLE 3 Find $\lim_{x \to 1} \dfrac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1}$.

SOLUTION Let $f(x) = (x^2 - 1)/(x - 1)$. We can't find the limit by substituting $x = 1$ because $f(1)$ isn't defined. Nor can we apply the Quotient Law, because the limit of the denominator is 0. Instead, we need to do some preliminary algebra. We factor the numerator as a difference of squares:

$$\frac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1} = \frac{(x - 1)(x + 1)}{x - 1}$$

Notice that in Example 3 we do not have an infinite limit even though the denominator approaches 0 as $x \to 1$. When both numerator and denominator approach 0, the limit may be infinite or it may be some finite value.

The numerator and denominator have a common factor of $x - 1$. When we take the limit as x approaches 1, we have $x \neq 1$ and so $x - 1 \neq 0$. Therefore we can cancel the common factor and then compute the limit by direct substitution as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{x \to 1} \frac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1} &= \lim_{x \to 1} \frac{(x - 1)(x + 1)}{x - 1} \\ &= \lim_{x \to 1} (x + 1) \\ &= 1 + 1 = 2 \end{aligned}$$

The limit in this example arose in Example 2.1.1 when we were trying to find the tangent to the parabola $y = x^2$ at the point $(1, 1)$. ■

NOTE In Example 3 we were able to compute the limit by replacing the given function $f(x) = (x^2 - 1)/(x - 1)$ by a simpler function, $g(x) = x + 1$, with the same limit. This is valid because $f(x) = g(x)$ except when $x = 1$, and in computing a limit as x approaches 1 we don't consider what happens when x is actually *equal* to 1. In general, we have the following useful fact.

> If $f(x) = g(x)$ when $x \neq a$, then $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = \lim_{x \to a} g(x)$, provided the limits exist.

EXAMPLE 4 Find $\lim_{x \to 1} g(x)$ where

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} x + 1 & \text{if } x \neq 1 \\ \pi & \text{if } x = 1 \end{cases}$$

SOLUTION Here g is defined at $x = 1$ and $g(1) = \pi$, but the value of a limit as x *approaches* 1 does not depend on the value of the function *at* 1. Since $g(x) = x + 1$ for $x \neq 1$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 1} g(x) = \lim_{x \to 1} (x + 1) = 2 \qquad ■$$

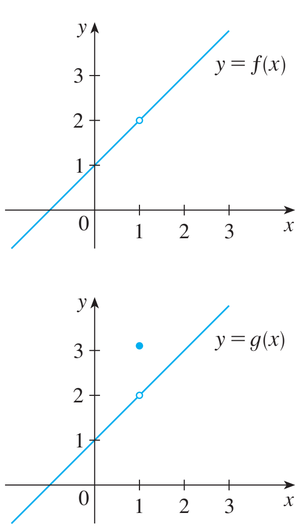


FIGURE 2
The graphs of the functions f (from Example 3) and g (from Example 4)

Note that the values of the functions in Examples 3 and 4 are identical except when $x = 1$ (see Figure 2) and so they have the same limit as x approaches 1.

EXAMPLE 5 Evaluate $\displaystyle\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{(3+h)^2 - 9}{h}$.

SOLUTION If we define

$$F(h) = \frac{(3+h)^2 - 9}{h}$$

then, as in Example 3, we can't compute $\lim_{h \to 0} F(h)$ by letting $h = 0$ since $F(0)$ is undefined. But if we simplify $F(h)$ algebraically, we find that

$$F(h) = \frac{(9 + 6h + h^2) - 9}{h} = \frac{6h + h^2}{h} = \frac{h(6+h)}{h} = 6 + h$$

(Recall that we consider only $h \neq 0$ when letting h approach 0.) Thus

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{(3+h)^2 - 9}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} (6 + h) = 6$$ ■

EXAMPLE 6 Find $\displaystyle\lim_{t \to 0} \frac{\sqrt{t^2 + 9} - 3}{t^2}$.

SOLUTION We can't apply the Quotient Law immediately, since the limit of the denominator is 0. Here the preliminary algebra consists of rationalizing the numerator:

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{t \to 0} \frac{\sqrt{t^2 + 9} - 3}{t^2} &= \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{\sqrt{t^2 + 9} - 3}{t^2} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{t^2 + 9} + 3}{\sqrt{t^2 + 9} + 3} \\
&= \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{(t^2 + 9) - 9}{t^2\left(\sqrt{t^2 + 9} + 3\right)} \\
&= \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{t^2}{t^2\left(\sqrt{t^2 + 9} + 3\right)} \\
&= \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{1}{\sqrt{t^2 + 9} + 3} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\lim_{t \to 0} (t^2 + 9)} + 3} \\
&= \frac{1}{3 + 3} = \frac{1}{6}
\end{aligned}$$

Here we use several properties of limits (5, 1, 10, 7, 9).

This calculation confirms the guess that we made in Example 2.2.2. ■

Some limits are best calculated by first finding the left- and right-hand limits. The following theorem is a reminder of what we discovered in Section 2.2. It says that a two-sided limit exists if and only if both of the one-sided limits exist and are equal.

1 Theorem $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$ if and only if $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = L = \lim_{x \to a^+} f(x)$

When computing one-sided limits, we use the fact that the Limit Laws also hold for one-sided limits.

EXAMPLE 7 Show that $\lim_{x \to 0} |x| = 0$.

SOLUTION Recall that

$$|x| = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \geqslant 0 \\ -x & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

The result of Example 7 looks plausible from Figure 3.

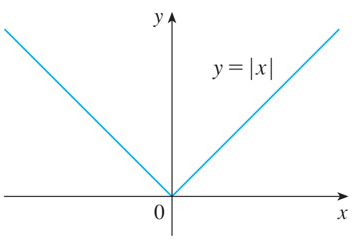


FIGURE 3

Since $|x| = x$ for $x > 0$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 0^+} |x| = \lim_{x \to 0^+} x = 0$$

For $x < 0$ we have $|x| = -x$ and so

$$\lim_{x \to 0^-} |x| = \lim_{x \to 0^-} (-x) = 0$$

Therefore, by Theorem 1,

$$\lim_{x \to 0} |x| = 0$$

EXAMPLE 8 Prove that $\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{|x|}{x}$ does not exist.

SOLUTION Using the facts that $|x| = x$ when $x > 0$ and $|x| = -x$ when $x < 0$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 0^+} \frac{|x|}{x} = \lim_{x \to 0^+} \frac{x}{x} = \lim_{x \to 0^+} 1 = 1$$

$$\lim_{x \to 0^-} \frac{|x|}{x} = \lim_{x \to 0^-} \frac{-x}{x} = \lim_{x \to 0^-} (-1) = -1$$

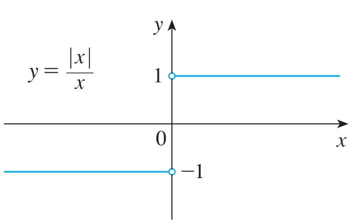


FIGURE 4

Since the right- and left-hand limits are different, it follows from Theorem 1 that $\lim_{x \to 0} |x|/x$ does not exist. The graph of the function $f(x) = |x|/x$ is shown in Figure 4 and supports the one-sided limits that we found.

EXAMPLE 9 If

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{x - 4} & \text{if } x > 4 \\ 8 - 2x & \text{if } x < 4 \end{cases}$$

determine whether $\lim_{x \to 4} f(x)$ exists.

It is shown in Example 2.4.3 that $\lim_{x \to 0^+} \sqrt{x} = 0$.

SOLUTION Since $f(x) = \sqrt{x - 4}$ for $x > 4$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 4^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \to 4^+} \sqrt{x - 4} = \sqrt{4 - 4} = 0$$

Since $f(x) = 8 - 2x$ for $x < 4$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 4^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \to 4^-} (8 - 2x) = 8 - 2 \cdot 4 = 0$$

The right- and left-hand limits are equal. Thus the limit exists and

$$\lim_{x \to 4} f(x) = 0$$

The graph of f is shown in Figure 5.

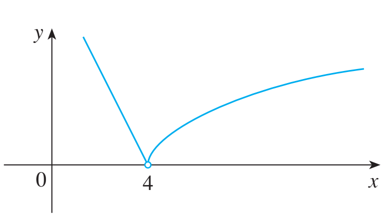


FIGURE 5

Other notations for $[\![x]\!]$ are $[x]$ and $\lfloor x \rfloor$. The greatest integer function is sometimes called the *floor function*.

EXAMPLE 10 The **greatest integer function** is defined by $[\![x]\!]$ = the largest integer that is less than or equal to x. (For instance, $[\![4]\!] = 4$, $[\![4.8]\!] = 4$, $[\![\pi]\!] = 3$, $[\![\sqrt{2}]\!] = 1$, $[\![-\frac{1}{2}]\!] = -1$.) Show that $\lim_{x\to 3} [\![x]\!]$ does not exist.

SOLUTION The graph of the greatest integer function is shown in Figure 6. Since $[\![x]\!] = 3$ for $3 \leqslant x < 4$, we have

$$\lim_{x\to 3^+} [\![x]\!] = \lim_{x\to 3^+} 3 = 3$$

Since $[\![x]\!] = 2$ for $2 \leqslant x < 3$, we have

$$\lim_{x\to 3^-} [\![x]\!] = \lim_{x\to 3^-} 2 = 2$$

Because these one-sided limits are not equal, $\lim_{x\to 3} [\![x]\!]$ does not exist by Theorem 1. ■

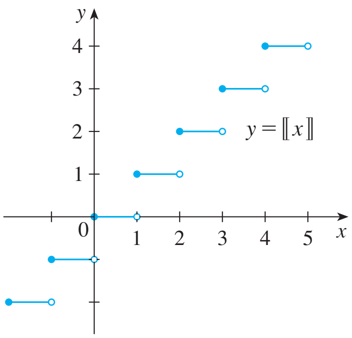


FIGURE 6
Greatest integer function

The next two theorems give two additional properties of limits. Their proofs can be found in Appendix F.

2 Theorem If $f(x) \leqslant g(x)$ when x is near a (except possibly at a) and the limits of f and g both exist as x approaches a, then

$$\lim_{x\to a} f(x) \leqslant \lim_{x\to a} g(x)$$

3 The Squeeze Theorem If $f(x) \leqslant g(x) \leqslant h(x)$ when x is near a (except possibly at a) and

$$\lim_{x\to a} f(x) = \lim_{x\to a} h(x) = L$$

then $$\lim_{x\to a} g(x) = L$$

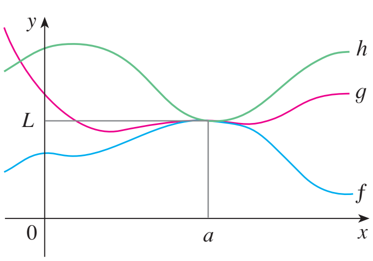


FIGURE 7

The Squeeze Theorem, which is sometimes called the Sandwich Theorem or the Pinching Theorem, is illustrated by Figure 7. It says that if $g(x)$ is squeezed between $f(x)$ and $h(x)$ near a, and if f and h have the same limit L at a, then g is forced to have the same limit L at a.

EXAMPLE 11 Show that $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} x^2 \sin\frac{1}{x} = 0$.

SOLUTION First note that we **cannot** use

$$\lim_{x\to 0} x^2 \sin\frac{1}{x} = \lim_{x\to 0} x^2 \cdot \lim_{x\to 0} \sin\frac{1}{x}$$

because $\lim_{x\to 0} \sin(1/x)$ does not exist (see Example 2.2.4).

Instead we apply the Squeeze Theorem, and so we need to find a function f smaller than $g(x) = x^2 \sin(1/x)$ and a function h bigger than g such that both $f(x)$ and $h(x)$ approach 0. To do this we use our knowledge of the sine function. Because the sine of any number lies between -1 and 1, we can write.

$$-1 \leqslant \sin\frac{1}{x} \leqslant 1 \tag{4}$$

Any inequality remains true when multiplied by a positive number. We know that $x^2 \geqslant 0$ for all x and so, multiplying each side of the inequalities in (4) by x^2, we get

$$-x^2 \leqslant x^2 \sin\frac{1}{x} \leqslant x^2$$

as illustrated by Figure 8. We know that

$$\lim_{x\to 0} x^2 = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x\to 0} (-x^2) = 0$$

Taking $f(x) = -x^2$, $g(x) = x^2 \sin(1/x)$, and $h(x) = x^2$ in the Squeeze Theorem, we obtain

$$\lim_{x\to 0} x^2 \sin\frac{1}{x} = 0$$

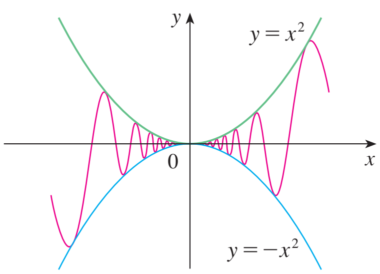


FIGURE 8
$y = x^2 \sin(1/x)$

2.3 EXERCISES

1. Given that

$$\lim_{x\to 2} f(x) = 4 \qquad \lim_{x\to 2} g(x) = -2 \qquad \lim_{x\to 2} h(x) = 0$$

find the limits that exist. If the limit does not exist, explain why.

(a) $\lim_{x\to 2} [f(x) + 5g(x)]$ (b) $\lim_{x\to 2} [g(x)]^3$

(c) $\lim_{x\to 2} \sqrt{f(x)}$ (d) $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{3f(x)}{g(x)}$

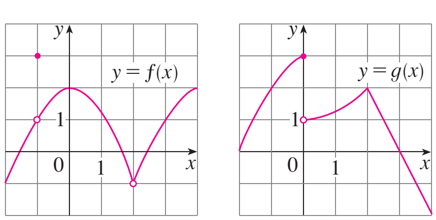
(e) $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{g(x)}{h(x)}$ (f) $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{g(x)h(x)}{f(x)}$

2. The graphs of f and g are given. Use them to evaluate each limit, if it exists. If the limit does not exist, explain why.

(a) $\lim_{x\to 2} [f(x) + g(x)]$ (b) $\lim_{x\to 0} [f(x) - g(x)]$

(c) $\lim_{x\to -1} [f(x)g(x)]$ (d) $\lim_{x\to 3} \dfrac{f(x)}{g(x)}$

(e) $\lim_{x\to 2} [x^2 f(x)]$ (f) $f(-1) + \lim_{x\to -1} g(x)$



3–9 Evaluate the limit and justify each step by indicating the appropriate Limit Law(s).

3. $\lim_{x\to 3} (5x^3 - 3x^2 + x - 6)$

4. $\lim_{x\to -1} (x^4 - 3x)(x^2 + 5x + 3)$

5. $\lim_{t\to -2} \dfrac{t^4 - 2}{2t^2 - 3t + 2}$

6. $\lim_{u\to -2} \sqrt{u^4 + 3u + 6}$

7. $\lim_{x\to 8} (1 + \sqrt[3]{x})(2 - 6x^2 + x^3)$

8. $\lim_{t\to 2} \left(\dfrac{t^2 - 2}{t^3 - 3t + 5}\right)^2$

9. $\lim_{x\to 2} \sqrt{\dfrac{2x^2 + 1}{3x - 2}}$

---

10. (a) What is wrong with the following equation?

$$\frac{x^2 + x - 6}{x - 2} = x + 3$$

(b) In view of part (a), explain why the equation

$$\lim_{x\to 2} \frac{x^2 + x - 6}{x - 2} = \lim_{x\to 2} (x + 3)$$

is correct.

11–32 Evaluate the limit, if it exists.

11. $\lim_{x\to 5} \dfrac{x^2 - 6x + 5}{x - 5}$

12. $\lim_{x\to -3} \dfrac{x^2 + 3x}{x^2 - x - 12}$

13. $\lim_{x\to 5} \dfrac{x^2 - 5x + 6}{x - 5}$

14. $\lim_{x\to 4} \dfrac{x^2 + 3x}{x^2 - x - 12}$

15. $\lim_{t\to -3} \dfrac{t^2 - 9}{2t^2 + 7t + 3}$

16. $\lim_{x\to -1} \dfrac{2x^2 + 3x + 1}{x^2 - 2x - 3}$

17. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{(-5 + h)^2 - 25}{h}$

18. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{(2 + h)^3 - 8}{h}$

19. $\lim_{x\to -2} \dfrac{x+2}{x^3+8}$

20. $\lim_{t\to 1} \dfrac{t^4-1}{t^3-1}$

21. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{\sqrt{9+h}-3}{h}$

22. $\lim_{u\to 2} \dfrac{\sqrt{4u+1}-3}{u-2}$

23. $\lim_{x\to 3} \dfrac{\dfrac{1}{x}-\dfrac{1}{3}}{x-3}$

24. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{(3+h)^{-1}-3^{-1}}{h}$

25. $\lim_{t\to 0} \dfrac{\sqrt{1+t}-\sqrt{1-t}}{t}$

26. $\lim_{t\to 0} \left(\dfrac{1}{t}-\dfrac{1}{t^2+t}\right)$

27. $\lim_{x\to 16} \dfrac{4-\sqrt{x}}{16x-x^2}$

28. $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{x^2-4x+4}{x^4-3x^2-4}$

29. $\lim_{t\to 0} \left(\dfrac{1}{t\sqrt{1+t}}-\dfrac{1}{t}\right)$

30. $\lim_{x\to -4} \dfrac{\sqrt{x^2+9}-5}{x+4}$

31. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{(x+h)^3-x^3}{h}$

32. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{\dfrac{1}{(x+h)^2}-\dfrac{1}{x^2}}{h}$

33. (a) Estimate the value of

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{x}{\sqrt{1+3x}-1}$$

by graphing the function $f(x) = x/(\sqrt{1+3x}-1)$.

(b) Make a table of values of $f(x)$ for x close to 0 and guess the value of the limit.

(c) Use the Limit Laws to prove that your guess is correct.

34. (a) Use a graph of

$$f(x) = \frac{\sqrt{3+x}-\sqrt{3}}{x}$$

to estimate the value of $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$ to two decimal places.

(b) Use a table of values of $f(x)$ to estimate the limit to four decimal places.

(c) Use the Limit Laws to find the exact value of the limit.

35. Use the Squeeze Theorem to show that $\lim_{x\to 0} (x^2 \cos 20\pi x) = 0$. Illustrate by graphing the functions $f(x) = -x^2$, $g(x) = x^2 \cos 20\pi x$, and $h(x) = x^2$ on the same screen.

36. Use the Squeeze Theorem to show that

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \sqrt{x^3+x^2}\, \sin\frac{\pi}{x} = 0$$

Illustrate by graphing the functions f, g, and h (in the notation of the Squeeze Theorem) on the same screen.

37. If $4x - 9 \leqslant f(x) \leqslant x^2 - 4x + 7$ for $x \geqslant 0$, find $\lim_{x\to 4} f(x)$.

38. If $2x \leqslant g(x) \leqslant x^4 - x^2 + 2$ for all x, evaluate $\lim_{x\to 1} g(x)$.

39. Prove that $\lim_{x\to 0} x^4 \cos \dfrac{2}{x} = 0$.

40. Prove that $\lim_{x\to 0^+} \sqrt{x}\, e^{\sin(\pi/x)} = 0$.

41–46 Find the limit, if it exists. If the limit does not exist, explain why.

41. $\lim_{x\to 3} \left(2x + |x-3|\right)$

42. $\lim_{x\to -6} \dfrac{2x+12}{|x+6|}$

43. $\lim_{x\to 0.5^-} \dfrac{2x-1}{|2x^3-x^2|}$

44. $\lim_{x\to -2} \dfrac{2-|x|}{2+x}$

45. $\lim_{x\to 0^-} \left(\dfrac{1}{x}-\dfrac{1}{|x|}\right)$

46. $\lim_{x\to 0^+} \left(\dfrac{1}{x}-\dfrac{1}{|x|}\right)$

47. The *signum* (or sign) *function*, denoted by sgn, is defined by

$$\operatorname{sgn} x = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } x > 0 \end{cases}$$

(a) Sketch the graph of this function.

(b) Find each of the following limits or explain why it does not exist.

(i) $\lim_{x\to 0^+} \operatorname{sgn} x$ (ii) $\lim_{x\to 0^-} \operatorname{sgn} x$

(iii) $\lim_{x\to 0} \operatorname{sgn} x$ (iv) $\lim_{x\to 0} |\operatorname{sgn} x|$

48. Let $g(x) = \operatorname{sgn}(\sin x)$.

(a) Find each of the following limits or explain why it does not exist.

(i) $\lim_{x\to 0^+} g(x)$ (ii) $\lim_{x\to 0^-} g(x)$ (iii) $\lim_{x\to 0} g(x)$

(iv) $\lim_{x\to \pi^+} g(x)$ (v) $\lim_{x\to \pi^-} g(x)$ (vi) $\lim_{x\to \pi} g(x)$

(b) For which values of a does $\lim_{x\to a} g(x)$ not exist?

(c) Sketch a graph of g.

49. Let $g(x) = \dfrac{x^2+x-6}{|x-2|}$.

(a) Find

(i) $\lim_{x\to 2^+} g(x)$ (ii) $\lim_{x\to 2^-} g(x)$

(b) Does $\lim_{x\to 2} g(x)$ exist?

(c) Sketch the graph of g.

50. Let

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2+1 & \text{if } x < 1 \\ (x-2)^2 & \text{if } x \geqslant 1 \end{cases}$$

(a) Find $\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$ and $\lim_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$.

(b) Does $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$ exist?

(c) Sketch the graph of f.

51. Let

$$B(t) = \begin{cases} 4 - \frac{1}{2}t & \text{if } t < 2 \\ \sqrt{t+c} & \text{if } t \geqslant 2 \end{cases}$$

Find the value of c so that $\lim_{t\to 2} B(t)$ exists.

52. Let

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x < 1 \\ 3 & \text{if } x = 1 \\ 2 - x^2 & \text{if } 1 < x \leqslant 2 \\ x - 3 & \text{if } x > 2 \end{cases}$$

(a) Evaluate each of the following, if it exists.
(i) $\lim_{x \to 1^-} g(x)$ (ii) $\lim_{x \to 1} g(x)$ (iii) $g(1)$
(iv) $\lim_{x \to 2^-} g(x)$ (v) $\lim_{x \to 2^+} g(x)$ (vi) $\lim_{x \to 2} g(x)$

(b) Sketch the graph of g.

53. (a) If the symbol $[\![\ ]\!]$ denotes the greatest integer function defined in Example 10, evaluate
(i) $\lim_{x \to -2^+} [\![x]\!]$ (ii) $\lim_{x \to -2} [\![x]\!]$ (iii) $\lim_{x \to -2.4} [\![x]\!]$

(b) If n is an integer, evaluate
(i) $\lim_{x \to n^-} [\![x]\!]$ (ii) $\lim_{x \to n^+} [\![x]\!]$

(c) For what values of a does $\lim_{x \to a} [\![x]\!]$ exist?

54. Let $f(x) = [\![\cos x]\!]$, $-\pi \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$.
(a) Sketch the graph of f.
(b) Evaluate each limit, if it exists.
(i) $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x)$ (ii) $\lim_{x \to (\pi/2)^-} f(x)$
(iii) $\lim_{x \to (\pi/2)^+} f(x)$ (iv) $\lim_{x \to \pi/2} f(x)$
(c) For what values of a does $\lim_{x \to a} f(x)$ exist?

55. If $f(x) = [\![x]\!] + [\![-x]\!]$, show that $\lim_{x \to 2} f(x)$ exists but is not equal to $f(2)$.

56. In the theory of relativity, the Lorentz contraction formula

$$L = L_0 \sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$$

expresses the length L of an object as a function of its velocity v with respect to an observer, where L_0 is the length of the object at rest and c is the speed of light. Find $\lim_{v \to c^-} L$ and interpret the result. Why is a left-hand limit necessary?

57. If p is a polynomial, show that $\lim_{x \to a} p(x) = p(a)$.

58. If r is a rational function, use Exercise 57 to show that $\lim_{x \to a} r(x) = r(a)$ for every number a in the domain of r.

59. If $\lim_{x \to 1} \dfrac{f(x) - 8}{x - 1} = 10$, find $\lim_{x \to 1} f(x)$.

60. If $\lim_{x \to 0} \dfrac{f(x)}{x^2} = 5$, find the following limits.
(a) $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x)$ (b) $\lim_{x \to 0} \dfrac{f(x)}{x}$

61. If

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if } x \text{ is rational} \\ 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is irrational} \end{cases}$$

prove that $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x) = 0$.

62. Show by means of an example that $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) + g(x)]$ may exist even though neither $\lim_{x \to a} f(x)$ nor $\lim_{x \to a} g(x)$ exists.

63. Show by means of an example that $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x)\, g(x)]$ may exist even though neither $\lim_{x \to a} f(x)$ nor $\lim_{x \to a} g(x)$ exists.

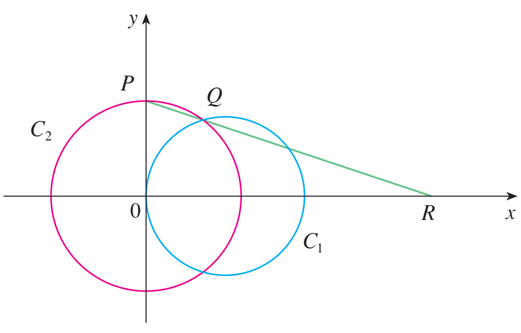
64. Evaluate $\lim_{x \to 2} \dfrac{\sqrt{6 - x} - 2}{\sqrt{3 - x} - 1}$.

65. Is there a number a such that

$$\lim_{x \to -2} \frac{3x^2 + ax + a + 3}{x^2 + x - 2}$$

exists? If so, find the value of a and the value of the limit.

66. The figure shows a fixed circle C_1 with equation $(x - 1)^2 + y^2 = 1$ and a shrinking circle C_2 with radius r and center the origin. P is the point $(0, r)$, Q is the upper point of intersection of the two circles, and R is the point of intersection of the line PQ and the x-axis. What happens to R as C_2 shrinks, that is, as $r \to 0^+$?



2.4 The Precise Definition of a Limit

The intuitive definition of a limit given in Section 2.2 is inadequate for some purposes because such phrases as "x is close to 2" and "$f(x)$ gets closer and closer to L" are vague. In order to be able to prove conclusively that

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \left(x^3 + \frac{\cos 5x}{10{,}000} \right) = 0.0001 \qquad \text{or} \qquad \lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$$

we must make the definition of a limit precise.

To motivate the precise definition of a limit, let's consider the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x - 1 & \text{if } x \neq 3 \\ 6 & \text{if } x = 3 \end{cases}$$

Intuitively, it is clear that when x is close to 3 but $x \neq 3$, then $f(x)$ is close to 5, and so $\lim_{x\to 3} f(x) = 5$.

To obtain more detailed information about how $f(x)$ varies when x is close to 3, we ask the following question:

How close to 3 does x have to be so that $f(x)$ differs from 5 by less than 0.1?

The distance from x to 3 is $|x - 3|$ and the distance from $f(x)$ to 5 is $|f(x) - 5|$, so our problem is to find a number δ such that

It is traditional to use the Greek letter δ (delta) in this situation.

$$|f(x) - 5| < 0.1 \qquad \text{if} \qquad |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{but } x \neq 3$$

If $|x - 3| > 0$, then $x \neq 3$, so an equivalent formulation of our problem is to find a number δ such that

$$|f(x) - 5| < 0.1 \qquad \text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta$$

Notice that if $0 < |x - 3| < (0.1)/2 = 0.05$, then

$$|f(x) - 5| = |(2x - 1) - 5| = |2x - 6| = 2|x - 3| < 2(0.05) = 0.1$$

that is, $$|f(x) - 5| < 0.1 \qquad \text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - 3| < 0.05$$

Thus an answer to the problem is given by $\delta = 0.05$; that is, if x is within a distance of 0.05 from 3, then $f(x)$ will be within a distance of 0.1 from 5.

If we change the number 0.1 in our problem to the smaller number 0.01, then by using the same method we find that $f(x)$ will differ from 5 by less than 0.01 provided that x differs from 3 by less than $(0.01)/2 = 0.005$:

$$|f(x) - 5| < 0.01 \qquad \text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - 3| < 0.005$$

Similarly,

$$|f(x) - 5| < 0.001 \qquad \text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - 3| < 0.0005$$

The numbers 0.1, 0.01, and 0.001 that we have considered are *error tolerances* that we might allow. For 5 to be the precise limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches 3, we must not only be able to bring the difference between $f(x)$ and 5 below each of these three numbers; we must be able to bring it below *any* positive number. And, by the same reasoning, we can! If we write ε (the Greek letter epsilon) for an arbitrary positive number, then we find as before that

$$\boxed{1} \qquad |f(x) - 5| < \varepsilon \qquad \text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta = \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$$

This is a precise way of saying that $f(x)$ is close to 5 when x is close to 3 because (1) says that we can make the values of $f(x)$ within an arbitrary distance ε from 5 by restricting the values of x to be within a distance $\varepsilon/2$ from 3 (but $x \neq 3$).

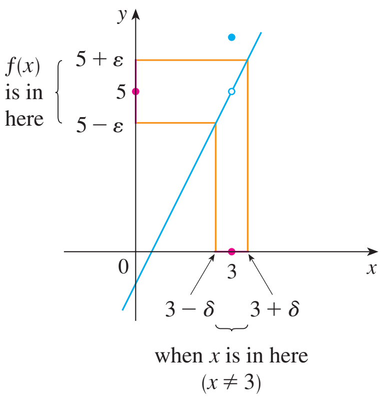


FIGURE 1

Note that (1) can be rewritten as follows:

$$\text{if} \quad 3 - \delta < x < 3 + \delta \quad (x \neq 3) \qquad \text{then} \qquad 5 - \varepsilon < f(x) < 5 + \varepsilon$$

and this is illustrated in Figure 1. By taking the values of x ($\neq 3$) to lie in the interval $(3 - \delta, 3 + \delta)$ we can make the values of $f(x)$ lie in the interval $(5 - \varepsilon, 5 + \varepsilon)$.

Using (1) as a model, we give a precise definition of a limit.

2 Precise Definition of a Limit Let f be a function defined on some open interval that contains the number a, except possibly at a itself. Then we say that the **limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches a is L**, and we write

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$$

if for every number $\varepsilon > 0$ there is a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta \qquad \text{then} \qquad |f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$$

Since $|x - a|$ is the distance from x to a and $|f(x) - L|$ is the distance from $f(x)$ to L, and since ε can be arbitrarily small, the definition of a limit can be expressed in words as follows:

> $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$ means that the distance between $f(x)$ and L can be made arbitrarily small by requiring that the distance from x to a be sufficiently small (but not 0).

Alternatively,

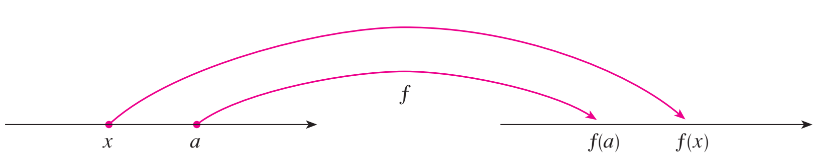
> $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$ means that the values of $f(x)$ can be made as close as we please to L by requiring x to be close enough to a (but not equal to a).

We can also reformulate Definition 2 in terms of intervals by observing that the inequality $|x - a| < \delta$ is equivalent to $-\delta < x - a < \delta$, which in turn can be written as $a - \delta < x < a + \delta$. Also $0 < |x - a|$ is true if and only if $x - a \neq 0$, that is, $x \neq a$. Similarly, the inequality $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$ is equivalent to the pair of inequalities $L - \varepsilon < f(x) < L + \varepsilon$. Therefore, in terms of intervals, Definition 2 can be stated as follows:

> $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$ means that for every $\varepsilon > 0$ (no matter how small ε is) we can find $\delta > 0$ such that if x lies in the open interval $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$ and $x \neq a$, then $f(x)$ lies in the open interval $(L - \varepsilon, L + \varepsilon)$.

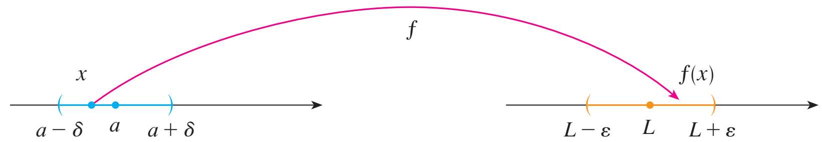
We interpret this statement geometrically by representing a function by an arrow diagram as in Figure 2, where f maps a subset of $\mathbb{R}$ onto another subset of $\mathbb{R}$.

FIGURE 2



The definition of limit says that if any small interval $(L - \varepsilon, L + \varepsilon)$ is given around L, then we can find an interval $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$ around a such that f maps all the points in $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$ (except possibly a) into the interval $(L - \varepsilon, L + \varepsilon)$. (See Figure 3.)

FIGURE 3



Another geometric interpretation of limits can be given in terms of the graph of a function. If $\varepsilon > 0$ is given, then we draw the horizontal lines $y = L + \varepsilon$ and $y = L - \varepsilon$ and the graph of f. (See Figure 4.) If $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$, then we can find a number $\delta > 0$ such that if we restrict x to lie in the interval $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$ and take $x \neq a$, then the curve $y = f(x)$ lies between the lines $y = L - \varepsilon$ and $y = L + \varepsilon$. (See Figure 5.) You can see that if such a δ has been found, then any smaller δ will also work.

It is important to realize that the process illustrated in Figures 4 and 5 must work for *every* positive number ε, no matter how small it is chosen. Figure 6 shows that if a smaller ε is chosen, then a smaller δ may be required.

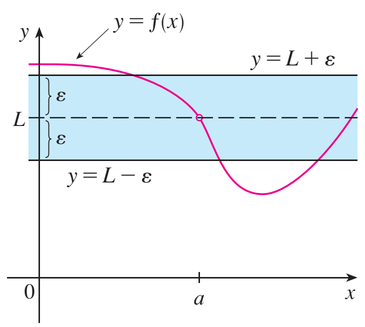


FIGURE 4

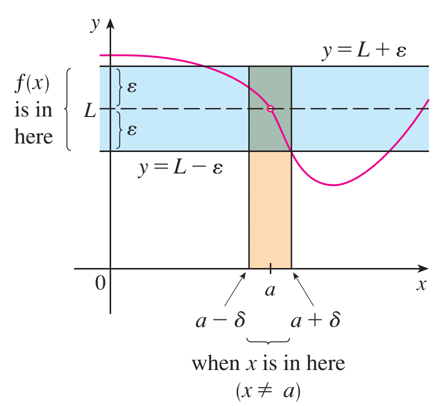


FIGURE 5

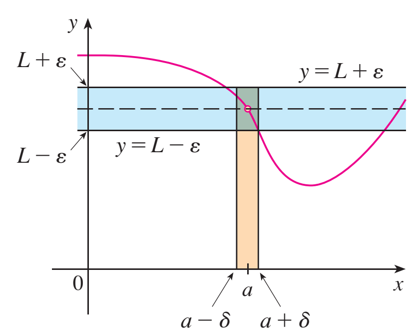


FIGURE 6

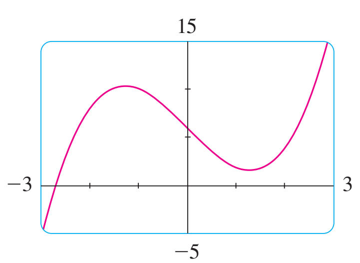


FIGURE 7

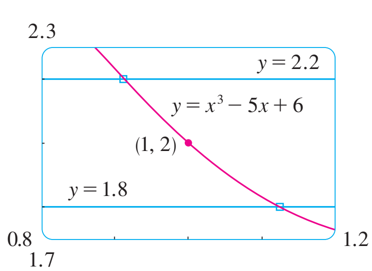


FIGURE 8

EXAMPLE 1 Since $f(x) = x^3 - 5x + 6$ is a polynomial, we know from the Direct Substitution Property that $\lim_{x \to 1} f(x) = f(1) = 1^3 - 5(1) + 6 = 2$. Use a graph to find a number δ such that if x is within δ of 1, then y is within 0.2 of 2, that is,

$$\text{if} \qquad |x - 1| < \delta \qquad \text{then} \qquad |(x^3 - 5x + 6) - 2| < 0.2$$

In other words, find a number δ that corresponds to $\varepsilon = 0.2$ in the definition of a limit for the function $f(x) = x^3 - 5x + 6$ with $a = 1$ and $L = 2$.

SOLUTION A graph of f is shown in Figure 7; we are interested in the region near the point $(1, 2)$. Notice that we can rewrite the inequality

$$|(x^3 - 5x + 6) - 2| < 0.2$$

as

$$-0.2 < (x^3 - 5x + 6) - 2 < 0.2$$

or equivalently

$$1.8 < x^3 - 5x + 6 < 2.2$$

So we need to determine the values of x for which the curve $y = x^3 - 5x + 6$ lies between the horizontal lines $y = 1.8$ and $y = 2.2$. Therefore we graph the curves $y = x^3 - 5x + 6$, $y = 1.8$, and $y = 2.2$ near the point $(1, 2)$ in Figure 8. Then we use the cursor to estimate that the x-coordinate of the point of intersection of the line $y = 2.2$ and the curve $y = x^3 - 5x + 6$ is about 0.911. Similarly, $y = x^3 - 5x + 6$ intersects the line $y = 1.8$ when $x \approx 1.124$. So, rounding toward 1 to be safe, we can say that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0.92 < x < 1.12 \qquad \text{then} \qquad 1.8 < x^3 - 5x + 6 < 2.2$$

This interval (0.92, 1.12) is not symmetric about $x = 1$. The distance from $x = 1$ to the left endpoint is $1 - 0.92 = 0.08$ and the distance to the right endpoint is 0.12. We can choose δ to be the smaller of these numbers, that is, $\delta = 0.08$. Then we can rewrite our inequalities in terms of distances as follows:

$$\text{if} \qquad |x - 1| < 0.08 \qquad \text{then} \qquad |(x^3 - 5x + 6) - 2| < 0.2$$

This just says that by keeping x within 0.08 of 1, we are able to keep $f(x)$ within 0.2 of 2.

Although we chose $\delta = 0.08$, any smaller positive value of δ would also have worked. ■

The graphical procedure in Example 1 gives an illustration of the definition for $\varepsilon = 0.2$, but it does not *prove* that the limit is equal to 2. A proof has to provide a δ for *every* ε.

In proving limit statements it may be helpful to think of the definition of limit as a challenge. First it challenges you with a number ε. Then you must be able to produce a suitable δ. You have to be able to do this for *every* $\varepsilon > 0$, not just a particular ε.

TEC In Module 2.4/2.6 you can explore the precise definition of a limit both graphically and numerically.

Imagine a contest between two people, A and B, and imagine yourself to be B. Person A stipulates that the fixed number L should be approximated by the values of $f(x)$ to within a degree of accuracy ε (say, 0.01). Person B then responds by finding a number δ such that if $0 < |x - a| < \delta$, then $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$. Then A may become more exacting and challenge B with a smaller value of ε (say, 0.0001). Again B has to respond by finding a corresponding δ. Usually the smaller the value of ε, the smaller the corresponding value of δ must be. If B always wins, no matter how small A makes ε, then $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$.

EXAMPLE 2 Prove that $\lim\limits_{x \to 3} (4x - 5) = 7$.

SOLUTION

1. *Preliminary analysis of the problem (guessing a value for δ).* Let ε be a given positive number. We want to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \qquad \text{then} \qquad |(4x - 5) - 7| < \varepsilon$$

But $|(4x - 5) - 7| = |4x - 12| = |4(x - 3)| = 4|x - 3|$. Therefore we want δ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \qquad \text{then} \qquad 4|x - 3| < \varepsilon$$

that is, $$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \qquad \text{then} \qquad |x - 3| < \frac{\varepsilon}{4}$$

This suggests that we should choose $\delta = \varepsilon/4$.

2. *Proof (showing that this δ works).* Given $\varepsilon > 0$, choose $\delta = \varepsilon/4$. If $0 < |x - 3| < \delta$, then

$$|(4x - 5) - 7| = |4x - 12| = 4|x - 3| < 4\delta = 4\left(\frac{\varepsilon}{4}\right) = \varepsilon$$

Thus

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |(4x - 5) - 7| < \varepsilon$$

Therefore, by the definition of a limit,

$$\lim_{x \to 3} (4x - 5) = 7$$

This example is illustrated by Figure 9.

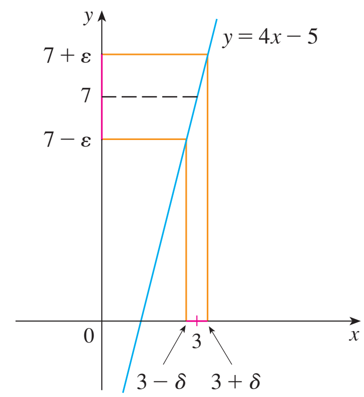


FIGURE 9

■

Cauchy and Limits

After the invention of calculus in the 17th century, there followed a period of free development of the subject in the 18th century. Mathematicians like the Bernoulli brothers and Euler were eager to exploit the power of calculus and boldly explored the consequences of this new and wonderful mathematical theory without worrying too much about whether their proofs were completely correct.

The 19th century, by contrast, was the Age of Rigor in mathematics. There was a movement to go back to the foundations of the subject—to provide careful definitions and rigorous proofs. At the forefront of this movement was the French mathematician Augustin-Louis Cauchy (1789–1857), who started out as a military engineer before becoming a mathematics professor in Paris. Cauchy took Newton's idea of a limit, which was kept alive in the 18th century by the French mathematician Jean d'Alembert, and made it more precise. His definition of a limit reads as follows: "When the successive values attributed to a variable approach indefinitely a fixed value so as to end by differing from it by as little as one wishes, this last is called the *limit* of all the others." But when Cauchy used this definition in examples and proofs, he often employed delta-epsilon inequalities similar to the ones in this section. A typical Cauchy proof starts with: "Designate by δ and ε two very small numbers; . . ." He used ε because of the correspondence between epsilon and the French word *erreur* and δ because delta corresponds to *différence*. Later, the German mathematician Karl Weierstrass (1815–1897) stated the definition of a limit exactly as in our Definition 2.

Note that in the solution of Example 2 there were two stages—guessing and proving. We made a preliminary analysis that enabled us to guess a value for δ. But then in the second stage we had to go back and prove in a careful, logical fashion that we had made a correct guess. This procedure is typical of much of mathematics. Sometimes it is necessary to first make an intelligent guess about the answer to a problem and then prove that the guess is correct.

The intuitive definitions of one-sided limits that were given in Section 2.2 can be precisely reformulated as follows.

3 Definition of Left-Hand Limit

$$\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = L$$

if for every number $\varepsilon > 0$ there is a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad a - \delta < x < a \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$$

4 Definition of Right-Hand Limit

$$\lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = L$$

if for every number $\varepsilon > 0$ there is a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad a < x < a + \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$$

Notice that Definition 3 is the same as Definition 2 except that x is restricted to lie in the *left* half $(a - \delta, a)$ of the interval $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$. In Definition 4, x is restricted to lie in the *right* half $(a, a + \delta)$ of the interval $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$.

EXAMPLE 3 Use Definition 4 to prove that $\lim_{x \to 0^+} \sqrt{x} = 0$.

SOLUTION

1. *Guessing a value for* δ. Let ε be a given positive number. Here $a = 0$ and $L = 0$, so we want to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < x < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |\sqrt{x} - 0| < \varepsilon$$

that is,

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < x < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad \sqrt{x} < \varepsilon$$

or, squaring both sides of the inequality $\sqrt{x} < \varepsilon$, we get

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < x < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad x < \varepsilon^2$$

This suggests that we should choose $\delta = \varepsilon^2$.

2. *Showing that this* δ *works.* Given $\varepsilon > 0$, let $\delta = \varepsilon^2$. If $0 < x < \delta$, then

$$\sqrt{x} < \sqrt{\delta} = \sqrt{\varepsilon^2} = \varepsilon$$

so

$$|\sqrt{x} - 0| < \varepsilon$$

According to Definition 4, this shows that $\lim_{x \to 0^+} \sqrt{x} = 0$. ■

EXAMPLE 4 Prove that $\lim_{x \to 3} x^2 = 9$.

SOLUTION

1. *Guessing a value for* δ. Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be given. We have to find a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |x^2 - 9| < \varepsilon$$

To connect $|x^2 - 9|$ with $|x - 3|$ we write $|x^2 - 9| = |(x + 3)(x - 3)|$. Then we want

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |x + 3||x - 3| < \varepsilon$$

Notice that if we can find a positive constant C such that $|x + 3| < C$, then

$$|x + 3||x - 3| < C|x - 3|$$

and we can make $C|x - 3| < \varepsilon$ by taking $|x - 3| < \varepsilon/C$, so we could choose $\delta = \varepsilon/C$.

We can find such a number C if we restrict x to lie in some interval centered at 3. In fact, since we are interested only in values of x that are close to 3, it is reasonable to assume that x is within a distance 1 from 3, that is, $|x - 3| < 1$. Then $2 < x < 4$, so $5 < x + 3 < 7$. Thus we have $|x + 3| < 7$, and so $C = 7$ is a suitable choice for the constant.

But now there are two restrictions on $|x - 3|$, namely

$$|x - 3| < 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad |x - 3| < \frac{\varepsilon}{C} = \frac{\varepsilon}{7}$$

To make sure that both of these inequalities are satisfied, we take δ to be the smaller of the two numbers 1 and $\varepsilon/7$. The notation for this is $\delta = \min\{1, \varepsilon/7\}$.

2. *Showing that this δ works.* Given $\varepsilon > 0$, let $\delta = \min\{1, \varepsilon/7\}$. If $0 < |x - 3| < \delta$, then $|x - 3| < 1 \Rightarrow 2 < x < 4 \Rightarrow |x + 3| < 7$ (as in part 1). We also have $|x - 3| < \varepsilon/7$, so

$$|x^2 - 9| = |x + 3||x - 3| < 7 \cdot \frac{\varepsilon}{7} = \varepsilon$$

This shows that $\lim_{x \to 3} x^2 = 9$. ■

As Example 4 shows, it is not always easy to prove that limit statements are true using the ε, δ definition. In fact, if we had been given a more complicated function such as $f(x) = (6x^2 - 8x + 9)/(2x^2 - 1)$, a proof would require a great deal of ingenuity. Fortunately this is unnecessary because the Limit Laws stated in Section 2.3 can be proved using Definition 2, and then the limits of complicated functions can be found rigorously from the Limit Laws without resorting to the definition directly.

For instance, we prove the Sum Law: If $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$ and $\lim_{x \to a} g(x) = M$ both exist, then

$$\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) + g(x)] = L + M$$

The remaining laws are proved in the exercises and in Appendix F.

PROOF OF THE SUM LAW Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be given. We must find $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) + g(x) - (L + M)| < \varepsilon$$

Triangle Inequality:

$$|a + b| \leqslant |a| + |b|$$

(See Appendix A).

Using the Triangle Inequality we can write

$$\boxed{5} \qquad \begin{aligned} |f(x) + g(x) - (L + M)| &= |(f(x) - L) + (g(x) - M)| \\ &\leqslant |f(x) - L| + |g(x) - M| \end{aligned}$$

We make $|f(x) + g(x) - (L + M)|$ less than ε by making each of the terms $|f(x) - L|$ and $|g(x) - M|$ less than $\varepsilon/2$.

Since $\varepsilon/2 > 0$ and $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$, there exists a number $\delta_1 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta_1 \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - L| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$$

Similarly, since $\lim_{x \to a} g(x) = M$, there exists a number $\delta_2 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta_2 \quad \text{then} \quad |g(x) - M| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$$

Let $\delta = \min\{\delta_1, \delta_2\}$, the smaller of the numbers δ_1 and δ_2. Notice that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta_1 \quad \text{and} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta_2$$

and so $$|f(x) - L| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad |g(x) - M| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$$

Therefore, by (5),

$$\begin{aligned} |f(x) + g(x) - (L + M)| &\leqslant |f(x) - L| + |g(x) - M| \\ &< \frac{\varepsilon}{2} + \frac{\varepsilon}{2} = \varepsilon \end{aligned}$$

To summarize,

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) + g(x) - (L + M)| < \varepsilon$$

Thus, by the definition of a limit,

$$\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) + g(x)] = L + M$$

Infinite Limits

Infinite limits can also be defined in a precise way. The following is a precise version of Definition 2.2.4.

6 Precise Definition of an Infinite Limit Let f be a function defined on some open interval that contains the number a, except possibly at a itself. Then

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = \infty$$

means that for every positive number M there is a positive number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad f(x) > M$$

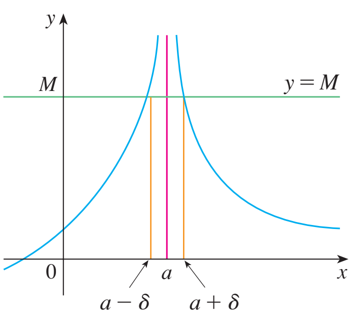


FIGURE 10

This says that the values of $f(x)$ can be made arbitrarily large (larger than any given number M) by requiring x to be close enough to a (within a distance δ, where δ depends on M, but with $x \neq a$). A geometric illustration is shown in Figure 10.

Given any horizontal line $y = M$, we can find a number $\delta > 0$ such that if we restrict x to lie in the interval $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$ but $x \neq a$, then the curve $y = f(x)$ lies above the line $y = M$. You can see that if a larger M is chosen, then a smaller δ may be required.

EXAMPLE 5 Use Definition 6 to prove that $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{1}{x^2} = \infty$.

SOLUTION Let M be a given positive number. We want to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad 1/x^2 > M$$

But

$$\frac{1}{x^2} > M \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad x^2 < \frac{1}{M} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \sqrt{x^2} < \sqrt{\frac{1}{M}} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad |x| < \frac{1}{\sqrt{M}}$$

So if we choose $\delta = 1/\sqrt{M}$ and $0 < |x| < \delta = 1/\sqrt{M}$, then $1/x^2 > M$. This shows that $1/x^2 \to \infty$ as $x \to 0$.

Similarly, the following is a precise version of Definition 2.2.5. It is illustrated by Figure 11.

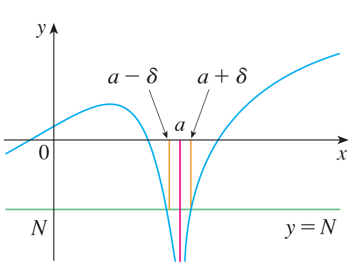


FIGURE 11

7 Definition Let f be a function defined on some open interval that contains the number a, except possibly at a itself. Then

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = -\infty$$

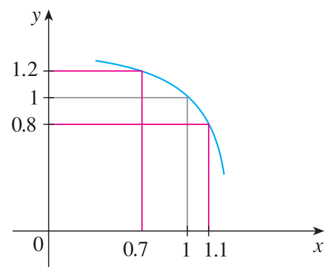
means that for every negative number N there is a positive number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad f(x) < N$$

2.4 EXERCISES

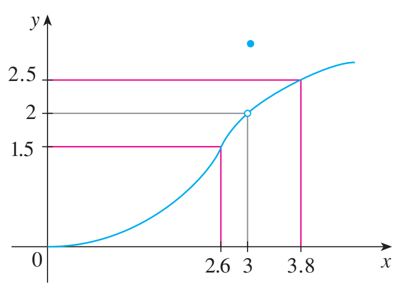
1. Use the given graph of f to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad |x - 1| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - 1| < 0.2$$



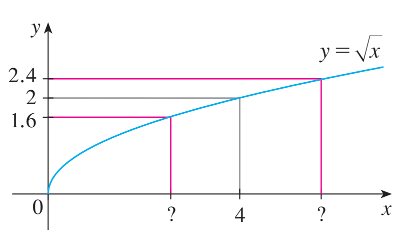
2. Use the given graph of f to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - 2| < 0.5$$



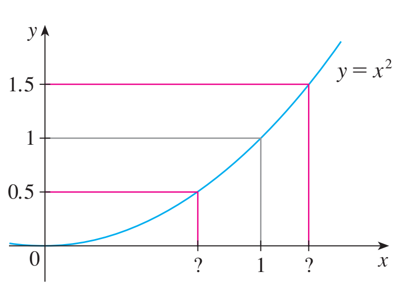
3. Use the given graph of $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad |x - 4| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |\sqrt{x} - 2| < 0.4$$



4. Use the given graph of $f(x) = x^2$ to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad |x - 1| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |x^2 - 1| < \tfrac{1}{2}$$



5. Use a graph to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad \left| x - \frac{\pi}{4} \right| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |\tan x - 1| < 0.2$$

6. Use a graph to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad |x - 1| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad \left| \frac{2x}{x^2 + 4} - 0.4 \right| < 0.1$$

7. For the limit

$$\lim_{x \to 2} (x^3 - 3x + 4) = 6$$

illustrate Definition 2 by finding values of δ that correspond to $\varepsilon = 0.2$ and $\varepsilon = 0.1$.

8. For the limit

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{e^{2x} - 1}{x} = 2$$

illustrate Definition 2 by finding values of δ that correspond to $\varepsilon = 0.5$ and $\varepsilon = 0.1$.

9. (a) Use a graph to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 2 < x < 2 + \delta \quad \text{then} \quad \frac{1}{\ln(x - 1)} > 100$$

(b) What limit does part (a) suggest is true?

10. Given that $\lim_{x \to \pi} \csc^2 x = \infty$, illustrate Definition 6 by finding values of δ that correspond to (a) $M = 500$ and (b) $M = 1000$.

11. A machinist is required to manufacture a circular metal disk with area 1000 cm^2.

(a) What radius produces such a disk?

(b) If the machinist is allowed an error tolerance of ± 5 cm^2 in the area of the disk, how close to the ideal radius in part (a) must the machinist control the radius?

(c) In terms of the ε, δ definition of $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$, what is x? What is $f(x)$? What is a? What is L? What value of ε is given? What is the corresponding value of δ?

12. A crystal growth furnace is used in research to determine how best to manufacture crystals used in electronic components for the space shuttle. For proper growth of the crystal, the temperature must be controlled accurately by adjusting the input power. Suppose the relationship is given by

$$T(w) = 0.1w^2 + 2.155w + 20$$

where T is the temperature in degrees Celsius and w is the power input in watts.

(a) How much power is needed to maintain the temperature at 200°C?

(b) If the temperature is allowed to vary from 200°C by up to ±1°C, what range of wattage is allowed for the input power?

(c) In terms of the ε, δ definition of $\lim_{x\to a} f(x) = L$, what is x? What is $f(x)$? What is a? What is L? What value of ε is given? What is the corresponding value of δ?

13. (a) Find a number δ such that if $|x - 2| < \delta$, then $|4x - 8| < \varepsilon$, where $\varepsilon = 0.1$.
(b) Repeat part (a) with $\varepsilon = 0.01$.

14. Given that $\lim_{x\to 2}(5x - 7) = 3$, illustrate Definition 2 by finding values of δ that correspond to $\varepsilon = 0.1$, $\varepsilon = 0.05$, and $\varepsilon = 0.01$.

15–18 Prove the statement using the ε, δ definition of a limit and illustrate with a diagram like Figure 9.

15. $\lim\limits_{x\to 3} \left(1 + \frac{1}{3}x\right) = 2$

16. $\lim\limits_{x\to 4} (2x - 5) = 3$

17. $\lim\limits_{x\to -3} (1 - 4x) = 13$

18. $\lim\limits_{x\to -2} (3x + 5) = -1$

19–32 Prove the statement using the ε, δ definition of a limit.

19. $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} \dfrac{2 + 4x}{3} = 2$

20. $\lim\limits_{x\to 10} \left(3 - \frac{4}{5}x\right) = -5$

21. $\lim\limits_{x\to 4} \dfrac{x^2 - 2x - 8}{x - 4} = 6$

22. $\lim\limits_{x\to -1.5} \dfrac{9 - 4x^2}{3 + 2x} = 6$

23. $\lim\limits_{x\to a} x = a$

24. $\lim\limits_{x\to a} c = c$

25. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} x^2 = 0$

26. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} x^3 = 0$

27. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} |x| = 0$

28. $\lim\limits_{x\to -6^+} \sqrt[8]{6 + x} = 0$

29. $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} (x^2 - 4x + 5) = 1$

30. $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} (x^2 + 2x - 7) = 1$

31. $\lim\limits_{x\to -2} (x^2 - 1) = 3$

32. $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} x^3 = 8$

33. Verify that another possible choice of δ for showing that $\lim_{x\to 3} x^2 = 9$ in Example 4 is $\delta = \min\{2, \varepsilon/8\}$.

34. Verify, by a geometric argument, that the largest possible choice of δ for showing that $\lim_{x\to 3} x^2 = 9$ is $\delta = \sqrt{9 + \varepsilon} - 3$.

CAS **35.** (a) For the limit $\lim_{x\to 1}(x^3 + x + 1) = 3$, use a graph to find a value of δ that corresponds to $\varepsilon = 0.4$.
(b) By using a computer algebra system to solve the cubic equation $x^3 + x + 1 = 3 + \varepsilon$, find the largest possible value of δ that works for any given $\varepsilon > 0$.
(c) Put $\varepsilon = 0.4$ in your answer to part (b) and compare with your answer to part (a).

36. Prove that $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} \dfrac{1}{x} = \dfrac{1}{2}$.

37. Prove that $\lim\limits_{x\to a} \sqrt{x} = \sqrt{a}$ if $a > 0$.

$$\left[\textit{Hint: } \text{Use } \left|\sqrt{x} - \sqrt{a}\right| = \frac{|x - a|}{\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{a}}. \right]$$

38. If H is the Heaviside function defined in Example 2.2.6, prove, using Definition 2, that $\lim_{t\to 0} H(t)$ does not exist. [*Hint:* Use an indirect proof as follows. Suppose that the limit is L. Take $\varepsilon = \frac{1}{2}$ in the definition of a limit and try to arrive at a contradiction.]

39. If the function f is defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is rational} \\ 1 & \text{if } x \text{ is irrational} \end{cases}$$

prove that $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$ does not exist.

40. By comparing Definitions 2, 3, and 4, prove Theorem 2.3.1.

41. How close to -3 do we have to take x so that

$$\frac{1}{(x + 3)^4} > 10{,}000$$

42. Prove, using Definition 6, that $\lim\limits_{x\to -3} \dfrac{1}{(x + 3)^4} = \infty$.

43. Prove that $\lim\limits_{x\to 0^+} \ln x = -\infty$.

44. Suppose that $\lim_{x\to a} f(x) = \infty$ and $\lim_{x\to a} g(x) = c$, where c is a real number. Prove each statement.
(a) $\lim\limits_{x\to a} [f(x) + g(x)] = \infty$
(b) $\lim\limits_{x\to a} [f(x)g(x)] = \infty$ if $c > 0$
(c) $\lim\limits_{x\to a} [f(x)g(x)] = -\infty$ if $c < 0$

2.5 Continuity

We noticed in Section 2.3 that the limit of a function as x approaches a can often be found simply by calculating the value of the function at a. Functions with this property are called *continuous at a*. We will see that the mathematical definition of continuity corresponds closely with the meaning of the word *continuity* in everyday language. (A continuous process is one that takes place gradually, without interruption or abrupt change.)

1 Definition A function f is **continuous at a number *a*** if

$$\lim_{x\to a} f(x) = f(a)$$

As illustrated in Figure 1, if f is continuous, then the points $(x, f(x))$ on the graph of f approach the point $(a, f(a))$ on the graph. So there is no gap in the curve.

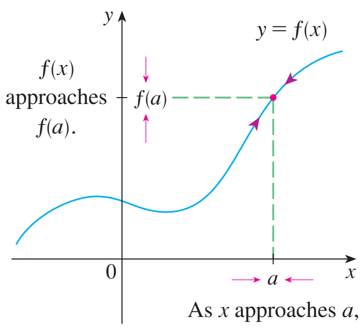


FIGURE 1

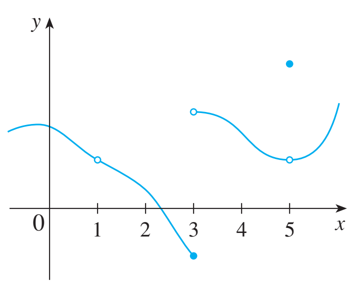


FIGURE 2

Notice that Definition 1 implicitly requires three things if f is continuous at a:

1. $f(a)$ is defined (that is, a is in the domain of f)

2. $\lim\limits_{x \to a} f(x)$ exists

3. $\lim\limits_{x \to a} f(x) = f(a)$

The definition says that f is continuous at a if $f(x)$ approaches $f(a)$ as x approaches a. Thus a continuous function f has the property that a small change in x produces only a small change in $f(x)$. In fact, the change in $f(x)$ can be kept as small as we please by keeping the change in x sufficiently small.

If f is defined near a (in other words, f is defined on an open interval containing a, except perhaps at a), we say that f is **discontinuous at** $\boldsymbol{a}$ (or f has a **discontinuity** at a) if f is not continuous at a.

Physical phenomena are usually continuous. For instance, the displacement or velocity of a vehicle varies continuously with time, as does a person's height. But discontinuities do occur in such situations as electric currents. [See Example 2.2.6, where the Heaviside function is discontinuous at 0 because $\lim_{t \to 0} H(t)$ does not exist.]

Geometrically, you can think of a function that is continuous at every number in an interval as a function whose graph has no break in it: the graph can be drawn without removing your pen from the paper.

EXAMPLE 1 Figure 2 shows the graph of a function f. At which numbers is f discontinuous? Why?

SOLUTION It looks as if there is a discontinuity when $a = 1$ because the graph has a break there. The official reason that f is discontinuous at 1 is that $f(1)$ is not defined.

The graph also has a break when $a = 3$, but the reason for the discontinuity is different. Here, $f(3)$ is defined, but $\lim_{x \to 3} f(x)$ does not exist (because the left and right limits are different). So f is discontinuous at 3.

What about $a = 5$? Here, $f(5)$ is defined and $\lim_{x \to 5} f(x)$ exists (because the left and right limits are the same). But

$$\lim_{x \to 5} f(x) \neq f(5)$$

So f is discontinuous at 5. ■

Now let's see how to detect discontinuities when a function is defined by a formula.

EXAMPLE 2 Where are each of the following functions discontinuous?

(a) $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - x - 2}{x - 2}$

(b) $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{x^2} & \text{if } x \neq 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$

(c) $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x^2 - x - 2}{x - 2} & \text{if } x \neq 2 \\ 1 & \text{if } x = 2 \end{cases}$

(d) $f(x) = [\![x]\!]$

SOLUTION

(a) Notice that $f(2)$ is not defined, so f is discontinuous at 2. Later we'll see why f is continuous at all other numbers.

(b) Here $f(0) = 1$ is defined but

$$\lim_{x \to 0} f(x) = \lim_{x \to 0} \frac{1}{x^2}$$

does not exist. (See Example 2.2.8.) So f is discontinuous at 0.

(c) Here $f(2) = 1$ is defined and

$$\lim_{x \to 2} f(x) = \lim_{x \to 2} \frac{x^2 - x - 2}{x - 2} = \lim_{x \to 2} \frac{(x - 2)(x + 1)}{x - 2} = \lim_{x \to 2} (x + 1) = 3$$

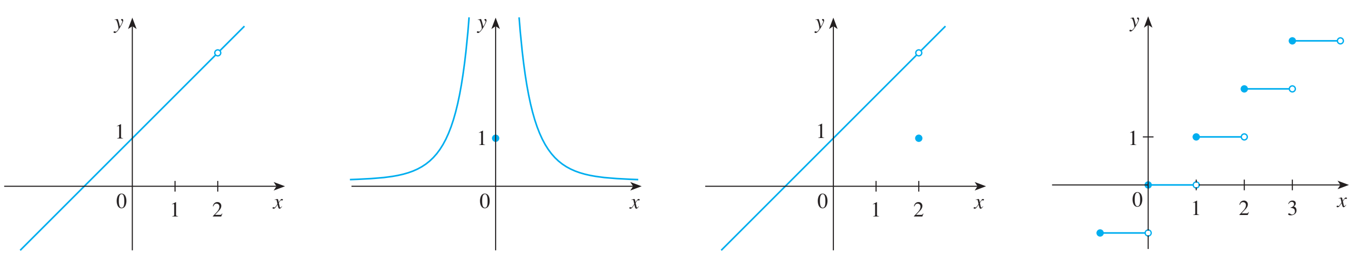
exists. But

$$\lim_{x \to 2} f(x) \neq f(2)$$

so f is not continuous at 2.

(d) The greatest integer function $f(x) = [\![x]\!]$ has discontinuities at all of the integers because $\lim_{x \to n} [\![x]\!]$ does not exist if n is an integer. (See Example 2.3.10 and Exercise 2.3.53.) ■

Figure 3 shows the graphs of the functions in Example 2. In each case the graph can't be drawn without lifting the pen from the paper because a hole or break or jump occurs in the graph. The kind of discontinuity illustrated in parts (a) and (c) is called **removable** because we could remove the discontinuity by redefining f at just the single number 2. [The function $g(x) = x + 1$ is continuous.] The discontinuity in part (b) is called an **infinite discontinuity**. The discontinuities in part (d) are called **jump discontinuities** because the function "jumps" from one value to another.



(a) $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - x - 2}{x - 2}$

(b) $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{x^2} & \text{if } x \neq 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$

(c) $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x^2 - x - 2}{x - 2} & \text{if } x \neq 2 \\ 1 & \text{if } x = 2 \end{cases}$

(d) $f(x) = [\![x]\!]$

FIGURE 3
Graphs of the functions in Example 2

2 Definition A function f is **continuous from the right at a number a** if

$$\lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = f(a)$$

and f is **continuous from the left at a** if

$$\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = f(a)$$

EXAMPLE 3 At each integer n, the function $f(x) = [\![x]\!]$ [see Figure 3(d)] is continuous from the right but discontinuous from the left because

$$\lim_{x \to n^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \to n^+} [\![x]\!] = n = f(n)$$

but $$\lim_{x \to n^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \to n^-} [\![x]\!] = n - 1 \neq f(n)$$ ■

3 Definition A function f is **continuous on an interval** if it is continuous at every number in the interval. (If f is defined only on one side of an endpoint of the interval, we understand *continuous* at the endpoint to mean *continuous from the right* or *continuous from the left*.)

EXAMPLE 4 Show that the function $f(x) = 1 - \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ is continuous on the interval $[-1, 1]$.

SOLUTION If $-1 < a < 1$, then using the Limit Laws, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{x \to a} f(x) &= \lim_{x \to a} \left(1 - \sqrt{1 - x^2}\right) \\
&= 1 - \lim_{x \to a} \sqrt{1 - x^2} && \text{(by Laws 2 and 7)} \\
&= 1 - \sqrt{\lim_{x \to a} (1 - x^2)} && \text{(by 11)} \\
&= 1 - \sqrt{1 - a^2} && \text{(by 2, 7, and 9)} \\
&= f(a)
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, by Definition 1, f is continuous at a if $-1 < a < 1$. Similar calculations show that

$$\lim_{x \to -1^+} f(x) = 1 = f(-1) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to 1^-} f(x) = 1 = f(1)$$

so f is continuous from the right at -1 and continuous from the left at 1. Therefore, according to Definition 3, f is continuous on $[-1, 1]$.

The graph of f is sketched in Figure 4. It is the lower half of the circle

$$x^2 + (y - 1)^2 = 1$$ ■

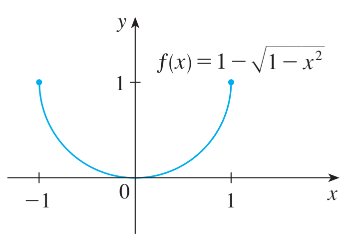


FIGURE 4

Instead of always using Definitions 1, 2, and 3 to verify the continuity of a function as we did in Example 4, it is often convenient to use the next theorem, which shows how to build up complicated continuous functions from simple ones.

4 Theorem If f and g are continuous at a and c is a constant, then the following functions are also continuous at a:

1. $f + g$ **2.** $f - g$ **3.** cf

4. fg **5.** $\dfrac{f}{g}$ if $g(a) \neq 0$

PROOF Each of the five parts of this theorem follows from the corresponding Limit Law in Section 2.3. For instance, we give the proof of part 1. Since f and g are continuous at a, we have

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = f(a) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to a} g(x) = g(a)$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x \to a} (f+g)(x) &= \lim_{x \to a} [f(x)+g(x)] \\ &= \lim_{x \to a} f(x) + \lim_{x \to a} g(x) \qquad \text{(by Law 1)} \\ &= f(a)+g(a) \\ &= (f+g)(a)\end{aligned}$$

This shows that $f+g$ is continuous at a. ■

It follows from Theorem 4 and Definition 3 that if f and g are continuous on an interval, then so are the functions $f+g$, $f-g$, cf, fg, and (if g is never 0) f/g. The following theorem was stated in Section 2.3 as the Direct Substitution Property.

5 Theorem

(a) Any polynomial is continuous everywhere; that is, it is continuous on $\mathbb{R} = (-\infty, \infty)$.

(b) Any rational function is continuous wherever it is defined; that is, it is continuous on its domain.

PROOF

(a) A polynomial is a function of the form

$$P(x) = c_n x^n + c_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + c_1 x + c_0$$

where $c_0, c_1, \ldots, c_n$ are constants. We know that

$$\lim_{x \to a} c_0 = c_0 \qquad \text{(by Law 7)}$$

and

$$\lim_{x \to a} x^m = a^m \qquad m = 1, 2, \ldots, n \qquad \text{(by 9)}$$

This equation is precisely the statement that the function $f(x) = x^m$ is a continuous function. Thus, by part 3 of Theorem 4, the function $g(x) = cx^m$ is continuous. Since P is a sum of functions of this form and a constant function, it follows from part 1 of Theorem 4 that P is continuous.

(b) A rational function is a function of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{P(x)}{Q(x)}$$

where P and Q are polynomials. The domain of f is $D = \{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid Q(x) \neq 0\}$. We know from part (a) that P and Q are continuous everywhere. Thus, by part 5 of Theorem 4, f is continuous at every number in D. ■

As an illustration of Theorem 5, observe that the volume of a sphere varies continuously with its radius because the formula $V(r) = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ shows that V is a polynomial function of r. Likewise, if a ball is thrown vertically into the air with a velocity of 50 ft/s, then the height of the ball in feet t seconds later is given by the formula $h = 50t - 16t^2$. Again this is a polynomial function, so the height is a continuous function of the elapsed time, as we might expect.